

The Project Gutenberg eBook of Exercises upon the Different Parts of Italian Speech, with References to Veneroni's Grammar, by Ferdinando Bottarelli and Giambattista Rolandi

This ebook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this ebook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you'll have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

Title: Exercises upon the Different Parts of Italian Speech, with References to Veneroni's Grammar

Author: Ferdinando Bottarelli

Editor: Giambattista Rolandi

Release date: November 9, 2015 [EBook #50419]

Language: English

Credits: Produced by Barbara Tozier, Bill Tozier and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team at <http://www.pgdp.net>

*** START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK EXERCISES UPON THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF ITALIAN SPEECH, WITH REFERENCES TO VENERONI'S GRAMMAR ***

TRANSCRIBER'S NOTE: Minor spelling and punctuation errors have been corrected but accents are retained as printed: inconsistently. The exception is the replacement of A' with Á, and so on.

**EXERCISES
UPON THE DIFFERENT
PARTS OF ITALIAN SPEECH**

[i]

WITH
REFERENCES
TO
VENERONI'S GRAMMAR:

TO WHICH IS ADDED,

AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE ROMAN HISTORY,
INTENDED AT ONCE TO MAKE THE LEARNER ACQUAINTED WITH
HISTORY, AND THE IDIOM OF THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE.

By F. BOTTARELLI, A. M.

The EIGHTH EDITION, carefully revised and corrected.

By G. B. ROLANDI.

PRINTED FOR J. COLLINGWOOD; LONGMAN, HURST, REES
ORME & BROWN; SIMPKIN & MARSHALL; G. & W. B.
WHITTAKER; T. BOOSEY & SONS; AND J. BOOKER.

1822.

Printed by T. C. Hansard, Peterboro'-court, Fleet-street, London.

PREFACE.

Amidst the laudable endeavours for the advancement of the Italian language, it is surprising that an easy and expeditious method of teaching it has been, in a great measure, neglected; and that beginners have hitherto been left without proper assistance. Under this impression, I have composed these EXERCISES upon the Syntax of VENERONI'S *Italian Grammar*; with what success I have executed the task, must be submitted to the decision of qualified and impartial judges.

These Exercises comprehend all the difficulties, and idiomatical expressions of the Italian language; the rules and exceptions of which are exemplified after such a method, that a learner cannot fail to become master of that language who has carefully gone through them once or twice.

The examples are of three sorts; the first, immediately following the rule, are short: as nothing farther is designed by them, than to illustrate that particular rule. The second sort are longer, and in them, not only the rule to which they refer, is exemplified, but also the foregoing ones are again brought into practice, the better to imprint them on the memory: since, were it not for this contrivance, learners would forget one rule, while they were learning another; the examples of the third kind, contain all the preceding, and some of the subsequent rules promiscuously; and for these reasons, are not to be attempted, until the student has gone twice at least, through the former part (for I think it advisable they should go through it more than once).

The radical Italian words are interlined, a thing very useful and requisite in a work of this nature, as well to save the trouble of consulting Dictionaries, as to prevent the use of improper terms, and wrong spelling, otherwise unavoidable; and those who wish to learn the Italian language, will thereby be enabled to make a much quicker progress than they could possibly do by the tedious task of searching a Dictionary for the words they require.

I have frequently omitted such words as had been often mentioned before, presuming there was no occasion for such repetition; and in order to excite attention in learners, that they might recollect what they had learned, and exert both their memory and judgment, or, on memory failing them, have recourse to a Dictionary, as a last resource. For these reasons, in the latter part of the Exercises, there are scarcely any Italian words but *nouns* and *verbs*, all the other parts of speech having already been gone through.

There is added, by way of Appendix, an Abridgment of the Roman History. As history is one of the most easy and entertaining parts of literature, and as that of the ancient Romans is absolutely necessary to a proper understanding of the Classics, I hope this addition will prove highly beneficial to young beginners.

N. B. Great pains have been taken to render this new Edition of BOTTARELLI'S ITALIAN EXERCISES more perfect than any hitherto published. In order to facilitate the Italian pronunciation, the words have been accented according to the plan of VENERONI'S GRAMMAR; the references to VENERONI have been compared, and carefully corrected, and many new ones added, together with several Notes and Remarks. All obsolete and improper phrases have been expunged; and the Chronology of the Roman History has been improved by the addition of DATES to each respective chapter: in

short, on account of the many additions, alterations, and improvements, this edition may almost be considered as a new book, and a worthy companion of the celebrated Grammar of VENERONI.

* A new Edition of the KEY to these EXERCISES is just published.

ITALIAN EXERCISES.

[5]

ON THE ACCIDENCE OF VERBS.

Regular Verbs of the First Conjugation. [See VENERONI'S GRAMMAR, page 88.]

I love, thou acquirest, he respects, we salute, you speak, ye pass, they walk.
am-àre acquist-àre rispet-àre salut-àre parl-àre pass-àre spasseggi-àre.

I did call, thou didst prattle, he did command, we did begin, you did buy, they did confess.
chiam-àre ciarl-àre comand-àre cominci-àre compr-àre confess-àre.

I confirmed, thou didst deliver, he preserved, we considered, you advised, they contended.
conferm-àre consegn-àre preserv-àre consider-àre consigli-àre contrast-àre.

I have declined, thou hast courted, he has cured, we have crowned, you have dedicated,
declin-àre corteggi-àre cur-àre coron-àre ^[1]dedic-àre
they have supped.
cen-àre.

I had wished, thou hadst declared, he had dispensed, we had assembled, you had undeceived,
desider-àre dichiar-àre dispens-àre radun-àre disingann-àre
they had wasted.
scialacqu-àre.

I will expect, thou shalt arrive, he will assault, we will assure, you will wish,
aspett-àre arriv-àre assalt-àre assicur-àre augur-àre
they shall increase.
augment-àre.

Dance, let him change, let us walk, sing ye, let them certify.
ball-àre cambi-àre passeggi-àre cant-àre ^[2]certific-àre.

[6]

That I may fast, that thou mayest besiege, that he may ride, that we may punish,
digiun-àre assedi-àre ^[2]cavalc-àre ^[2]castig-àre
that you may pass, that they may cause.
pass-àre cagion-àre.

That I might caress, that thou mightest burn, that he might stoop, that we might accept,
accarezz-àre abbruci-àre ^[2]abbass-àrsi accett-àre
that you might embrace, that they might mend.
abbracci-àre accomod-àre.

I should accompany, thou shouldst accuse, he should baptize, we should mistrust,
accompagn-àre accus-àre battezz-àre ^[3]diffid-àrsi
you should venture, they should administer.
^[2]arrisic-àre amministr-àre.

That I may have lamented, that thou mayest have invented, that he may have governed,
lament-àre invent-àre govern-àre
that we may have tamed, that you may have asked, that they may have experienced.
addimestic-àre domand-àre speriment-àre.

That I might have formed, that thou mightest have taken away, that he might have sent,
form-áre lev-áre mand-áre
 that we might have prepared, that you might have deprived, that they might have resembled.
prepar-áre priv-áre rassomigli-áre.

I should have prolonged, thou shouldst have tried, he should have remedied,
^[2]*prolung-áre prov-áre rimedi-áre*
 we should have refused, you should have carried back again, they should have prayed.
rifiut-áre riport-áre ^[2]preg-áre.

I shall or will have warmed, thou shalt have transferred, he shall have judged,
riscald-áre trasport-áre ^[4]giudic-áre
 we shall have fortified, you shall have inflamed, they shall have failed.
^[4]*fortific-áre infiam-áre ^[4]manc-áre.*

[7]

- [1] Verbs ending in *care* and *gare*, introduce *h* before *e* and *i*: wherefore, you must here write *certifichino*, not *certificino*. See *Veneroni's Grammar*, page 92.
- [2] See *Gram.* p. 92.
- [3] *Abbassarsi* is for *abbassare-si*, see *Gram.* p. 148.
- [4] See page 92.

Regular Verbs of the Second Conjugation. [See GRAMMAR, p. 95.]

I believe, thou receivest, he sees, we repeat, you beat, they drink.
créd-ere ricév-ere ved-ére ripét-ere bátt-ere bév-ere.

I did yield up, thou didst owe, he did cleave, we did groan, you did feed, they did hang up.
céd-ere dov-ére fénd-ere gém-ere pásc-ere appénd-ere.

I enjoyed, thou pressedst, he reaped, we shone, you repeated, they sat down.
god-ére prém-ere miét-ere rilúc-ere ripét-ere sed-ére.

I have sold, thou hast crept along, he has shrieked, we have feared, you have beaten,
vénd-ere sérp-ere stríd-ere tem-ére bátt-ere
 they have received.
ricév-ere.

The following Verbs of the Second Conjugation are irregular. [See GRAM. p. 111.]

I had fallen, thou hadst pleased, he had held, we had grieved, you had appeared,
^[1]*cad-ére piac-ére ten-ére ^{[1][2]}dol-érsi par-ére*
 they had pleased.
piac-ére.

I shall or will persuade, thou shalt lie down, he shall be able, we shall remain, you shall know,
persuad-ére giac-ére pot-ére riman-ére sap-ére
 they shall be accustomed.
^{[1][3]}*sol-ére.*

Be silent, let him see, let us hold, be ye pleased, let them fall again.
tac-ére ved-ére ten-ére compiac-érsi ricad-ére.

That I may have, that thou mayest owe, that he may fall, that we may lie down,
avére dov-ére cad-ére giac-ére
 that you may be able, that they may grieve.
pot-ére dol-érsi.

[8]

That I might appear, that thou mightest lie down, that he might please,
par-ère *giac-ère* *piac-ère*
that we might persuade, that you might be able, that they might know.
persuad-ère *pot-ère* *sap-ère.*

I should be silent, thou shouldst be accustomed, he should be worth, we should hold,
tac-ère ^[4]*sol-ère* *val-ère* *ten-ère*
you should see, they should be willing.
ved-ère *vol-ère.*

For a full conjugation of all the verbs in *ere*, see VENERONI'S GRAMMAR, p. 95.

- [1] Combined with *essere* and not *avere*, in the compound tenses.
- [2] See page 148.
- [3] See page 122.
- [4] With *essere*.

Regular Verbs of the Third Conjugation. [See GRAMMAR, p. 102.]

I hear, thou followest, he opens, we boil, you consent, they convert.
sent-ère *segu-ère* *apr-ère* *boll-ère* *consent-ère* *convert-ère.*

I did cover, thou didst sow, he did sleep, we did fly, you did lie, they did die.
^[1]*copr-ère* *cuc-ère* *dorm-ère* *fugg-ère* *ment-ère* ^[1]*mor-ère.*

I departed, thou didst suffer, he repented, we ascended, you served, they went out.
part-ère ^[1]*soffr-ère* *pent-irsi* *sal-ère* *serv-ère* *sort-ère.*

I have dressed, thou hast heard, he has consented, we have slept, you have covered,
vest-ère *ud-ère* *consent-ère* *dorm-ère* *copr-ère*
they have boiled.
boll-ère.

[9]

- [1] *Coprire, morire, and soffrire*, though regular in every other respect, make in the participle passive, *coperto, morto, and sofferto*.

The following Verbs in ire are irregular.^[1] [See VENERONI'S GRAMMAR, p. 144.]

I had appeared, thou hadst uttered, he had buried, we had dared, you had abolished,
compar-ère *profer-ère* *seppell-ère* *ard-ère* *abol-ère*
they had understood.
cap-ère.

I shall or will abhor, thou shalt enrich, he shall blush, we shall banish, you shall whiten,
abbor-ère *arricch-ère* *arross-ère* *band-ère* *bianch-ère*
they shall pity.
compat-ère.

Conceive thou, let him digest, let us finish, approve ye, let them bloom.
concep-ère *diger-ère* *fin-ère* *grad-ère* *fior-ère.*

That I may suffer, that thou mayest grow mad, that he may languish, that we may dispatch,
pat-ère *impazz-ère* *langu-ère* *sped-ère*
that you may unite, that they may obey.
un-ère *obbed-ère.*

That I might colour, that thou mightest flourish, that he might sharpen,
color-ère *fior-ère* *inacerb-ère*
that we might animate, that you might harden, that they might bellow.

I would strike, thou wouldst banish, he would abhor, we would abolish, you would enrich,
colp-íre band-íre abborr-íre abbol-íre arricch-íre
they would comprehend.
cap-íre.

For the formation of compound tenses, see VENERONI'S GRAMMAR, p. 77, 82, and 88.

[1] They make *isco* in the present and corresponding tenses; as *comparisco, proferisco,* &c. instead of *comparo, profero,* &c.

Other Verbs of the Second Conjugation that are irregular only in some Tenses and Persons. [See GRAMMAR, p. 125, and the following.]

[10]

I belong, thou kindlest, he takes, we perceive, you kill, they burn.
apparten-ére accénd-ere prénd-ere accorg-érsi uccíd-ere árd-ere.

I did hide, thou didst oppress, he did sprinkle, we did divide, you did absolve, they did absorb.
nascónd-ere opprim-ere aspérg-ere divid-ere assólv-ere assórb-ere.

I assumed, thou offeredst, he demanded, we plucked up, you shut, they engraved.
^[1]*assúm-ere porg-ere richiéd-ere divell-ere chiud-ere incid-ere.*

I have granted, thou hast run, he has decided, we have believed, you have boiled,
conced-ere corr-ere decid-ere cred-ere cuoc-ere
they have decided.
decid-ere.

I had deluded, thou hadst oppressed, he had defended, we had expressed, you had sprinkled,
delud-ere opprim-ere difend-ere esprim-ere asperg-ere
they had known.
sap-ére.

I shall, or will grieve, thou shalt erect, he shall exclude, we shall require, you shall expel,
dol-érsi erg-ere esclud-ere esig-ere spell-ere
they shall extinguish.
estingu-ere.

Melt thou, let him drive in, let us feign, break ye, let them reflect.
fond-ere figg-ere fing-ere frang-ere riflett-ere.

That I may lie down, that thou mayest fry, that he may join, that she may imprint,
giac-ére frigg-ere giung-ere imprim-ere
that we may hang up, that you may see, that they may include.
append-ere ved-ére includ-ere.

[11]

That I might soak, that thou mightest intrude, that he might read, that we might put,
intrad-ere intrud-ere legg-ere mett-ere
that you might bite, that they might plunge.
mord-ere immerg-ere.

I would move, thou wouldst milk, he would conceal, we would neglect, you would foresee,
muov-ere mung-ere nascond-ere neglig-ere preved-ére
they would hurt (morally).
nuoc-ere.

That I may have offended, that thou mayest have oppressed, that he may have struck,
offend-ere opprim-ere percuot-ere
that we may have lost, that you may have pleased, that they may have wept.
perd-ere piac-ére piang-ere.

That I might have painted, that thou mightest have presented, that he might have curtailed,
diping-ere *porg-ere* *precid-ere*
that we might have taken, that you might have presumed, that they might have protected.
prend-ere *presum-ere* *protegg-ere.*

I should have sat down, thou shouldest have returned, he should have reduced,
sed-ére *rend-ere* *ridur-re*
we should have laughed, you should have answered, they should have suspended.
rid-ere *rispond-ere* *sospend-ere.*

When I shall have scattered, thou shalt have shaken, he shall have risen, we shall have killed,
sparg-ere *scuot-ere* *sorg-ere* *uccid-ere*
you shall have conquered, they shall have lived.
vinc-ere *viv-ere.*

[1] Let it be remarked that, in all the following verbs in *ere*, not accentuated, the accent is on the antepenultima; as *pórgere*, *richiédere*, &c.

[12]

On the RULES of the ITALIAN SYNTAX, *with References to VENERONI'S Grammar.*

On the ORDER of WORDS. [See GRAM. p. 196.]

I write three hours every day.
scrivere tre ^[1]*ora ogni* ^[2]*giórno.*

Thou art too troublesome to my friends.
éssere ^[3]*troppo molésto amico.*

He speaks like a Roman orator.
parláre come Románo ^[4]*oratóre.*

We go out of town every Spring.
andáre fuóri ^[5]*città ogni primavéra.*

You shew your probity very plainly.
mostráre probità molto ^[6]*chiaraménte.*

They think it is very fine weather ^[7]to walk out.
pensáre ^[8]*fare* ^[9]*bello tempo passeggiáre.*

I was extremely glad to see him again.
^[10]*rallegrársi estremaménte rivedére.*

Thou wert generously rewarded.
essere generosaménte ricompensáre.

He bought many things to send abroad.
compráre molto cosa mandáre fuóri del paese.

We encouraged all arts and trades.
incoraggire ^[11]*tutto arte mestiére.*

You baffled their wicked designs.
sconcertáre scelleráto diségno.

They tempted our faithful subjects.

I have enriched his numerous family.
avére arricchíre ^[12]*numeróso famíglia.*

Thou hast many accounts to settle.
molto conto *regoláre.*

He has renewed his promises to us.
rinnováre *proméssa*

We have seen the chief curiosities.
vedére *principále curiosità.*

You have examined them carefully.
esamináre *attentaménte.*

They have declared their last will.
dichiaráre *último volontà.*

I had resolved to get rid of them.
^[13]*risólversi* *disfársi*

Thou hadst determined to say it plainly.
determináre *dire* *schiettaménte.*

He had fixed on that sort of diversion.
fissáre *quello sorta* *divertiménto.*

We had sworn to love each other eternally.
giuráre *amársi* *eternaménte.*

You had forsaken his acquaintance.
abbandonáre *conoscénza.*

They had implored the king's clemency.
imploráre *Re* *cleménza.*

I shall ever commend prudent people.
sempre *lodáre* *prudente gente.*

Thou shalt publish this news every where.
spárgere *nuóva* *da per tutto.*

He will return from France next week.
ritornáre *Fráncia* *próssimo settimána.*

We shall travel day and night till we arrive.
viaggiáre *giórno e notte* *finchè* ^[14]*arriváre.*

You will do yourself immortal honor.
fare *immortále onóre.*

They will disgrace their noble family.
disonoráre *nóbile famíglia.*

Bring me that bottle and a glass.

Let him gather all his things, and then go.
radunáre tutto roba poi andáre.

Let us walk in the garden before dinner.
spasseggiáre [16]giardíno avánti pranzo.

Go and meet all our friends on the road.
andáre incontráre tutto amíco sulla strada.

Let them answer all my questions.
[17]rispóndere dománda.

- [1] Nouns ending in *a*, make the plural in *e*, Ex. *ora*, plur. *ore*.
- [2] Those in *o*, make the plural in *i*, *giorno*, *giorni*.
- [3] It is a general rule, that all words of two syllables have the first long (except those whose last syllable takes a grave accent), therefore such words need not hereafter be accentuated.
- [4] Subst. in *e*, make *i* in the plural, *oratore*, *oratori*.
- [5] See *Gram.* p. 44, on words in *tà* indeclinable.
- [6] See *Gram.* p. 158, on the formation of adverbs out of adjectives.
- [7] *To*, must be translated by the word *per*.
- [8] *Che fa*, as in French, *qu'il fait*.
- [9] *Bello* loses its last syllable, and makes *bel*. See *Gram.* p. 56.
- [10] See *Gram.* p. 147, on reciprocal verbs.
- [11] See the declension of *tutto*, *Gram.* p. 73.
- [12] See *Gram.* p. 53, on adjectives ending in *o*.
- [13] *Risólvere* makes in the part. passive *risolúto*.
- [14] Must be the future tense.
- [15] See *Gram.* p. 205.
- [16] See the rules on the preposition *nello*, *nella*, p. 42.
- [17] *Rispondere* governs the dative case of the thing.

On the Articles lo, la, li, le, gli. [See VENERONI'S GRAMMAR, p. 35, and 200.]

The study of belles lettres has always been recommended to the youth of both sexes.
[1]studio belle lèttere [2]éssere sempre stato raccomandáre [3]gioventù ambedúe sesso.

Great events and revolutions followed the death of Cæsar.
grande evénto rivoluzióne seguíre morte Césare.

The fear of torments made him fly his country.
timóre torménto fare fuggíre pátria.

Poland was for many years the seat of domestic divisions. Portugal is a despotic kingdom.
Polónia éssere per molto anno seggio doméstico divisióne. Portogálio despótico regno.

Avarice is despicable.
Avarízia sprezzábile.

My lord the archbishop, visited all the clergy.
signór arcivéscovo visitáre clero.

My lord the president, decreed it in his behalf.
[4]signór presidénte decretáre favóre.

Madam the countess has ordered it.
signóra contéssa comandáre.

The gentlemen are not yet come to see us.
signóri éssere ancóra venire vedére.

Women are very fair in the northern countries.
donna molto bióndo settentrionále paése.

- [1] *Lo* before nouns beginning with an *s*, and followed by another consonant. See *Gram.* p. 36.
- [2] *Essere* instead of *avere*. See p. 84.
- [3] Words in *ù* are indeclinable. See p. 50.
- [4] The article *il* must be put before *signore*: except before ecclesiastical titles, when we must say *Monsignor*.

The English particle to, before infinitives, is sometimes rendered in Italian by the Article il or lo. [See VENERONI'S GRAMMAR, p. 200.]

[15]

It is forbidden to do evil.
éssere proibíre fare male.

It is not always convenient to speak the truth.
sempre convenévole dire verità.

It is permitted to a sick person to complain.
perméttete ammaláto ^[1]lamentársi.

It is not polite to interrupt any one who speaks.
civíle interrómperre uno che parláre.

It is right to correct boys whilst they are young.
giústo corréggere ragázzo mentre éssere gióvane.

It is a great satisfaction to people of feeling to hear that their friends are in perfect health.
grande soddisfazióne sensibile gente sentíre amico éssere perfétto salúte.

It is a great pleasure to see brothers well united together; but it is a great grief to see them disagree.
gran piacére vedére fratéllo bene unito insiéme ma grande dispiacére vedére discórdia.

It is not always proper to correct children for the faults they commit; but it is very necessary to make them sensible of them.
sempre convenévole corréggere ragázzo fallo comméttete ma molto necessário fare accórgersi

It is easy to give advice, but difficult to execute.
fácile dare consíglío ma difficile eseguíre.

It is easy to perceive you neglect your business.
accórgersi trascuráre affáre.

It was ever commendable to study languages.
sempre lodévole studiáre lingua.

- [1] See *Veneroni's Grammar*, p. 147, on reciprocal verbs.

A dutiful child is a great comfort to his parents.
obbediente figliuolo grande consolazione suo genitore.

A good wife is an inestimable treasure.
buono moglie inestimabile tesoro.

A diligent master instructs attentive scholars.
diligente maestro instruire attento scolaro.

A good action deserves great praise.
buono azione meritare grande lode.

A rash counsel is productive of fatal consequences.
inconsiderato consiglio è l'origine fatale conseguenza.

My father and mother are very compassionate.
padre^[1] madre^[1] essere molto compassionevole.

Their brother and sister are industrious.
fratello sorella industrioso.

Your house and garden are excessively beautiful.
casa giardino eccessivamente bello.

My exercise and my lesson are difficult.
tema lezione difficile.

Our man-servant and our maid-servant are good, and therefore they shall be rewarded.
servitore serva buono perciò saranno ricompensati.

You, your master, and your mistress, have been civil ^[2]to me, and merit my greatest thanks.
padrone padrona essere stato civile meritare ^[3]grande ringraziamento.

[1] An adjective with several substantives, must agree in gender with that which is the most worthy, the masculine being accounted more worthy than the feminine.

[2] Render it thus; towards me, *verso di me*.

[3] See *Gram.* p. 56, on superlatives.

France is larger and more powerful than Italy.
Francia grande potente Italia.

Virgil wrote more than any other poet.
Virgilio scrivere qualunque altro poeta^[1].

Horace was much more satirical than Juvenal.
Orazio essere satirico Giuvenale.

Your countrymen are much richer than mine.
vostro compatriotto ^[2]ricco mio.

This water is much clearer than crystal.
questo acqua chiáro cristálo.

Your sister's hands are whiter than alabaster.
sorélla ^[3]mano ^[4]biánco alabástro.

The English are more studious than their neighbours.
Inglése studióso vicino.

Milton was much more learned than Dante.
Milton éssere dotto Dante.

The Russians behaved more bravely than the Turks.
Russo comportársi valorosaménte Turco.

Cicero was less happy than Diogenes.
Ciceróne felice Diógene.

Lewis the Fourteenth was much less admired than Henry the Fourth.
Luígi décimo quarto ammiraré Enríco quarto.

London is far better paved than Paris.
Londra lastricáre Parígi.

Venice is much less populous than Naples.
Venézia popoláto Nápoli.

Lend me three thousand pounds for a month.
prestáre tre^[5] mila lira per mese.

I have inherited five hundred guineas a year.
avére ereditáre cinque cento ghinea anno.

I have seven brothers and two sisters alive.
sette fratélllo due sorélla vivo.

The tenth of next month I will pay you.
diéci próssimo mese pagáre.

Judas was one of the twelve apostles.
Giúda éssere dódici apóstolo.

William the Third was a great conqueror.
Gugliélmo^[6] terzo éssere grande conquistatóre.

Henry the Fourth of France was a matchless warrior.
Enríco quarto di Francia incomparábile guerriéro.

Pope Sixtus the Fifth was a great man.
Papa Sisto quinto grande uómo.

Your master has a fine country-house.
padróne avere^[7] bello villa.

Your brother has six fine dapple-bay horses.
fratello sei bello bajo pomelláto caválo.

Your uncle and aunt are my dear friends.
zio zia essere caro amico.

[18]

Our general was ever reputed a gallant man.
generále sempre riputáre valoróso uómo.

Solomon was a wise king.
Salomóne sávio re.

King George is a religious monarch.
Giórgio religióso monárca.

Nero was a wicked man.
Neróne cattívo uómo.

Cræsus was reckoned a rich prince.
Creso stimáre ricco príncipe.

The duke of Richmond has six fine grey horses.
duca Richmond sei bello^[8] leárdo cavállo.

Spain is a hot country, but Germany is a very cold one.
Spagna caldo paése ma Germánia freddo paése.

Give me some cold water, and red wine.
dare freddo acqua rosso vino.

I like cold weather better than hot.
amáre freddo tempo caldo.

The English ladies are handsomer than the Italian.
Inglése signóra bella Italiána.

I always thought he was a troublesome man.
sempre crédere^[9] incómoo uómo.

This poor man has crooked legs.
questo póvero uómo avére storto gamba.

Will you have a round hat or a cocked one?
avére rotóndo cappéllo od a tre pizzi?

There is a sickly man, methinks.
ammalaticcio uómo mi pare.

You are a thoughtful philosopher.
pensieróso filósofo.

The industrious are praised, but the slothful are despised.
^[10]industrióso lodáre ma pigro sprezzáre.

The righteous find peace but the wicked feel torment.
giústo trováre pace scelleráto sentíre torménto.

[19]

The covetous despise the poor, but the generous cherish them.
aváro sprezzare póvero ma generóso volére bene.

The merciful shall find mercy, but the cruel shall be punished.
misericiordioso trovare pietà crudéle castigáre.

The wise man seeks wisdom, but the fool despises understanding.
sávio cercáre sapiénza stolto sprezzáre intendiménto.

Give me some bread, some wine, some butter, some cheese, some boiled beef, some mutton,
dare ^[11]del pane vino butirro cácio manzo aléssu castráto
some veal, some pork, some pie, some fish, some mustard, some salt.
vitéllo porco pasticcio pesce mostárda sale.

Go and fetch me a bit of the white bread.
andáre a cercáre pezzo biáncu pane.

Send to market to buy me ten pounds of fresh butter.^[12]
mandáre mercáto compráre libbra fresco butirro.

Bring directly six pounds of black cherries.
portáre súbito sei libbra nero cerása.

Seven hundred of fresh walnuts, and five pounds of hazle nuts.
sette cento noce cinque nocciuóla.

Have you been at Paris? No, but I have been at Rouen: it is a fine city. Did you see it?
éssere stato^[13] No ma Roáno bello città vedére

Did you give your brother the book I lent you?
dare^[14] fratéllo libro prestáre

No, I gave it to my sister, and she will return it to you when she has read it.
dare sorélla restituíre léggere.

Did you tell your father I was in the country?
dire padre éssere campágnà?

No, sir, but I told my mother, it is all one.
dire madre è l'istéssa cosa.

God demands the pureness of our hearts.
Iddio richiedere purità^[15] cuóre.

We ought to die for the service of our princes.
dovére moríre servízio príncipe.

[1] See *Gram.* p. 45, on words ending in *a* of the masc.

[2] Words ending in *cco*, take an *h* in the plural, p. 49.

[3] *Mano* is of the fem. gender.

[4] Such words as end in *co*, and *go*, take also an *h* in the plural. See *Gram.* p. 49.

[5] Nouns of number ought to be put before the substantive.

[6] Nouns of order must be after the substantive, when we speak of ecclesiastical, or secular princes.

[7] Adjectives of quality must be put before substantives.

[8] Nouns of colours, elementary qualities, and of nations, must be put after the substantive.

[9] The adjectives of condition, figure, and quantity, must be put after substantives.

[10] Adjectives that have no substantives must be of the masculine gender, because *man* is always understood.

- [11] When you ask for something without specifying the quantity of it, use the article partitive, *del, della, &c.* See *Gram.* p. 210.
- [12] You must use the article indefinite *di*, when you specify the quantity of the thing.
- [13] We put the indefinite article *a* before the names of cities.
- [14] Before the names of men and women, we use *al, alla, allo, a, &c.*
- [15] We use *de'* before pronouns that are joined with substantives. See *Veneroni's Grammar*, p. 201.

CONSTRUCTION OF ADJECTIVES.

The Adjectives expressing desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, forgetting, care, fear, guilt, or any passion of the mind, require the following Noun to be in the Genitive case.

Those who are desirous of honour, are studious of learning and of good manners.
quello éssere bramóso onóre studióso sciénza buóno costúme.

He who is not mindful of his own business, cannot be mindful of other people's.
badáre própío affáre non può badare altro.

Thou and I are guilty of the same error.
colpévole stesso errore.

I am ignorant of the fact you mention.
ignoráre fatto mentionáre.

Adjectives expressing plenty, or want, as poor, destitute, empty, full, void, require the Genitive case after them.

He whose purse is empty of money, has a house empty of friends.
borsa vuóto danáro avére casa vuóto amíco.

The court which is full of flatterers, is pernicious to a prince, though he be rich in substance and loaded with honours. [21]
corte éssere piéno adulatóre pernizióso príncipe ricco sostánza
colmáre onóre.

A journey of twenty miles wearies a horse that is very hungry; for while he is wanting food, he goes slowly.
viággio venti míglia stancáre cavállo fame perchè mentre bramare di mangiare
andáre lentamente.

Laziness has need of spurs.
pigrizia bisógno speróne.

The Adjectives worthy, unworthy, adorned, encompassed, content, must have a Genitive after them.

Those are unworthy of the glory of Heaven, who do not think virtue worthy of love, nor are contented with the pleasure it gives.
éssere indégno glória Ciélo che crédere virtù dégno amóre
conténto piacére che dare.

A son endowed with excellent qualities rejoices his father, whose good example he imitates, whose comands he observes; he is never in fear, for he provokes not his father's anger;
figliuólo dotáto eccellénte qualità rallegráre padre buóno esempio imitáre

he is always mindful of his own duty, and is like a staff to his father's old age.
comándo osserváre mai paura perchè provocáre padre cóllera
sempre attento al dovére è come bastóne padre vecchiája.

He who is endowed with fine qualities, and does not behave himself well,
quello dotáto bello qualità comportársi bene
is unworthy of men's society.^[1]
éssere indégno uómo società.

[22]

Those who are contented with their own condition, are worthy of the name of good Christians;
éssere conténto condizióne degno nome buóno Cristiáno
but such are very rare.
ma raro.

If the city of Naples were encompassed with walls, it would be stronger than it is.
se città Nápoli circondáre muro éssere^[2] forte

England is adorned with the fairest ladies in the world.
Inghiltéra ornáre ^[3]belle signóra di questo mondo.

Our country is surrounded with the strongest bulwarks.
paése chiúdere ^[3]forte baluárdo.

Few people are satisfied with the lot that Providence has granted them.
poco gente soddisfáre sorte Providénza concédere.

- [1] See *Gram.* p. 44, on words ending in *tà*.
[2] See *Veneroni's Grammar*, p. 53, on comparatives.
[3] *Ibid.* p. 56, on superlatives.

Adjectives governing a Dative Case. *Adjectives expressing* submission, relation, pleasure, due, resistance, difficulty, likeness, *have the following Noun in the Dative case.*

Virtue is pleasant to the righteous, and profitable to those who love it.
^[1]virtù piacévole giústo profittévole quello che amáre.

Adoration is due to God, the King of all the world.
L'adorazione dovúto Dio ^[2]Re tutto mondo.

Honour is due to kings, because God has commanded us to be obedient to them.
onóre dovúto Re perchè avére comandáre éssere obbediénte

[23]

It is a lamentable thing to see some men of great abilities prone to wickedness.
lamentévole cosa uómo gràn talénto dédito vízio.

A man who suffers himself to be led by the corrupted pleasures of this world,
uómo lasciársi allettáre corróto piacére quésto mondo
is not like a Christian.
símile Cristiáno.

Children are not always like their parents, they are sometimes quite different from them.
figliuólo sempre símile genitóre talvóla affáto differente

My father is like my uncle as to his features, and the colour of his hair, but he is not like him
padre somigliáre zio in quanto fattézza colóre ^[3]capélló ma éssere
in his manners.
costúme.

- [1] Words in *ù* are indeclinable. See *Gram.* p. 50.
 [2] *Re* is indeclinable.
 [3] *Of his hair, dei capelli in plur. and without the possessive pronoun.*

On Superlative Degrees. [See GRAM. p. 56.]

The most noble of all virtues is charity.
la più nobile tutto virtù carità.

The most ingenious people are not always the most learned.
^[1]*più ingegnoso persone essere sempre dotto.*

The most pernicious of all crimes is slander, it ruins very often the reputation of
pernizioso delitto calunnia rovinare ^[2]spesso riputazione
 the most honest people; it puts discord between the most intimate friends; in short, it is
onesto gente mettere discordia fra intrinseco amico in somma
 the most abominable crime in the world.
abbominevole delitto mondo.

The best quality a man can have, is to be civil and obliging.
^[3]*buono qualità uomo potèere avère civile cortése.*

The best friend we can have is money.
amico danáro.

The best soldiers in the world are sometimes conquered.
soldáto talvolta vincere.

Buy me the best grapes you see in town.
compráre uva vedére città.

The greatest men in the kingdom confess it.
gránde uómo regno confessáre.

The richest people are not the happiest.
ricco gente felice.

The most virtuous women have been guilty of coquetry.
virtuóso donna essere stato colpévole civetteria.

We should pay a most particular attention to the moral conduct of our children of both sexes.
^[4]*fare particuláre attenzióne morale condotta figliuolo ambidúe sesso.*

- [1] *The most* is rendered by *il più, la più, i più, &c.* See *Gram.* p. 56.
 [2] *Very often* makes *spessissimo*.
 [3] The superlative-comparative degree of *buono* is *il migliore*. See *Veneroni's Grammar*, p. 54 and 56.
 [4] *Pay* is often turned by *fare*.

OF PRONOUNS.

The Personal Pronouns io, tu, egli, essa, noi, voi, eglino, *being the Nominative Case, ought to be put before the Verb; but if there is an Interrogation, they must be put after.* [See GRAM. p. 67.]

I entreat you to grant me that favour.
supplicáre voi accordáre quello favóre.

What do you desire of me, madam?
brama madama?

What do you say? I do not understand you.
dire capíre

Don't you speak Italian and French?
parláre Italiáno Francése?

I understand them pretty well, but when you speak so very fast, I cannot understand you.
capíre assái bene ma quando parláre cosí presto non posso capíre.

[25]

I ask you if you will do me a favour.
domándare volére fare favóre.

With all my heart, if I can conveniently.
tutto cuóre potére senz'inconveniente.

Have you an Italian Dictionary?
avére Italiáno Dizionario?

Yes, I have Baretto's Dictionary.
Barétti Dizionario.

Will you lend it me for two or three weeks?
prestáre^[1] due tre settimána?

It is at your service, if you will send for it.
vostro servízio mandárla a prendere.

Did you see the castle St. Angelo at Rome?
vedére castélllo Sant' Angelo Roma?

Yes, it is very fine, very rich; in short, I think it is the finest castle in Europe.
bello ricco in somma crédere^[2] Európa.

Do you think the city of Paris is finer than London?
crédere città Parígi bello Londra?

No, it is not so large, nor so well built as London.
gránde bene fabbricata

I love you with all my heart, and if you come tomorrow to see me, I'll give you
amáre tutto cuóre veníre dománi vedére dare
what I promised you.
prométtere.

I will not fail, but I am afraid to be too troublesome to you and your family.
mancáre temére di dar troppo incómodo vóstra famiglia.

Did Mr. N. give you the book you lent him?
Signór dare libro prestáre?

Not yet; but I believe he will give it me soon.
non ancóra ma crédere dare presto.

[26]

When you get it back, will you bring it me?
^[3]*riavére portáre*

I will do it willingly to oblige you.
fare volentiéri obbligáre.

When will you go to see him at his country seat?
quando andáre vedére sua villa?

I think I shall pay him a visit next month.
crédere fare una visita próssimo mese.

Bring me your grammar to-morrow.
portáre grammática dománi.

Here it is, sir, I brought it with me.
Eccola quà portáre meco.

Shew me what you have written. That is not well, write it over again, and when you have done, give it to your brother.
mostráre quel che avére scrívere bene scrívere di nuóvo ^[4]quando avére fare dare vostro fratéllo.

I think you are very idle.
crédere éssere pigro.

Forgive me, I will be more diligent in future.
perdonáre éssere più diligénte all'avveníre.

Reach me that pen-knife, and a clean pen.
recáre quello temperíno pulíto penna.

Write an exercise, and then read it to me.
scrívere tema e poi leggétemelo^[5].

[1] See *Gram.* p. 203, on pronouns conjunctive.

[2] See *Gram.* p. 56, on superlatives.

[3] This supposes a future, which must be thus expressed: *Quando lo riávréte*, &c.

[4] Turn, *and when you shall have done it.*

[5] See *Gram.* p. 66.

On PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE and POSSESSIVE. *The Pronouns Demonstrative*, questo, quello, or questi, and *the Pronouns Possessive*, mio, mia, tuo, tua, suo, sua, agree with the Substantive in gender, number, and case. [See VENERONI'S GRAMMAR, p. 68, 70.]

This horse goes better than any of yours.
questo cavállo andáre qualúnque vostro.

This man is more honest than you think.^[1]
uómo onésto crédere.

This woman is not so happy as she deserves.
donna felíce meritáre.

[27]

This house stands in a most pleasant situation.
casa stare améno situazióne.

Those gentlemen seem to be very cold.
quello signóre parére avére freddo.

Those ladies are very modestly drest.
signóra modestaménte vestíre.

My brother is gone into the country for a month.
^[2]*mio fratélló andáre campáigna mese.*

My mother is gone over to France for her health.
madre Fráncia salute.

My countrymen are very great politicians.
compatrióttó grande político.

My sister loves public diversions to excess.
sorélla amáre púbblíco divertíméntó éccesso.

My action is not so blameable as you say.
azióne biasimíévole díre.

Your affection for me is false and deceitful.
affétto falso ingannévole.

Her history has made a great noise in the world.
stória avére fare grande romóre mondo.

Their clock is always out of order.
orológio sempre in disórdine.

Our house is finer than yours.
casa bello vostro.

Their affairs are more perplexed ^[3]than you imagine.
affáre piú imbarazzáre immagináre.

[1] You must here add a negation, after a comparison, as in French, and turn it thus; *than you not think: Che non credéte.*

[2] Pronouns possessive take the article *il, la, &c.* in the nominative. See *Veneroni's Grammar*, p. 68.

[3] Render it, as in the preceding page; *than you not imagine.*

The Pronoun Relative che is of all genders, and of all numbers. [See GRAM. p. 72.]

The woman who has a fair face, is loved by all.
donna che avére bello viso amáre tutto.

The girl who brought me my pen-knife, is lovely.
ragázza portáre temperíno amábile.

The man who bought my house is honest.
uómo compráre mio casa onésto.

My brother's hat begins to be worn.
fratéllu cappéllu cominciáre usársi.

The man who struck my father is a butcher.
uómo percuótere padre macellájo.

The rewards which are promised shall be given, if the work required, be done
ricompénsa éssere prométtete dare lavóro richiésto fare
 the day after to-morrow.
dopo dománi.

The horse which my father sold was very good.
cavállo padre véndere éssere buóno.

The comedy which we acted was pleasant.
commédia rappreséntare piacévole.

The wood we bargained for was too dry.
legna patteggiáre éssere secco.

The wine which you drank yesterday was excellent.
vino bere jeri eccellente.

The last lesson you gave me, was very difficult.
ultimo lezióne dare molto difficile.

The company you keep is not honest.
compagnía praticáre onésto.

I have found the book which I had lost.
avére trováre libro pérdere.

Note that, he that, and she that, must be turned by quello che, and quella che.

[See GRAM. p. 72.]

He who does not fear God, does not deserve to live.
temére Dio meritáre vívere.

He who came this morning, has a great regard for you.
veníre mattína avére gran stima

He who gave you that counsel, is not your friend.
dare consígljo amíco.

He who lives honestly, is esteemed by all people.
vívere onestaménte stimáre tutti.

He who told you that, did not tell you the truth.
dire verità.

He who sold you these boots, did not cheat you.
véndere stivále ingannáre.

She who is the handsomest, is not always the most virtuous.
bello sempre virtuóso.

He who speaks continually, must be very troublesome.
parláre continuamente deve éssere seccante.

She who told me the news, is your great friend.
dire nuóvo grande amíca.

She who is married to Mr. N. is the most lively.
maritáre signór N. piú viváce.

She who gave me your letter, speaks Italian very well.
dare léttera parláre Italiáno beníssimo.

He whom you look for, is gone away this morning.
cercáre partire mattína.

He whom you hate the most, is my intimate friend.
odiáre intímo amico.

He whom you have recommended to me, is a great rogue.
avére raccomandáre birbánte.

He whom you saw yesterday, is my sister's lover.
vedére jéri éssere sorélla amánte.

He whom God loves, is very happy.
Dio amáre felíce.

She whom you see, is my eldest brother's mistress.
vedére primogénito fratéllo innamoráta.

She whom I have recommended to you, is modest.
avére raccomandáre modéstó.

She whom I loved most, is married.
amáre il piú maratáre.

I saw to-day the gentleman with whom we dined yesterday.
vedére oggi signóre ^[1] pranzáre jéri.

Here is the lady for whom I have great respect.
Ecco signóra avére grande rispétto.

Let us go and see the lady with whom we played at cards in the country the other day.
andáre ^[2] vedere giuocáre carta campáña altro giòrno.

The gentleman with whom we were the other day is very ill.
signóre éssere altro giòrno ammaláto.

There is the horse for which I offered twenty guineas.
cavállo esibire venti ghinéa.

Shew me the watch for which you gave forty pounds.
mostráre oriuólo dare quaránta lire.

There is the sword for which I offered six guineas.
spada esibire sei ghinéa.

[1] We put *quale* after the prepositions, speaking of reasonable creatures. See *Gram.* p. 72.

[2] See *Gram.* p. 205, on verbs of motion.

*When between two Verbs there is a Noun, or a Pronoun, we put generally **che** after the first Verb.*

I thought you could speak Italian better than you do.^[1]
crédere parláre Italiáno méglío

I fancy you are not yet twenty years old.
immaginársi ^[2]avére ancóra venti anni.

I hope you will not refuse me the favour to recommend me to your friends in town.
speráre rícusáre favóre raccomandáre vostro amico città.

My uncle told me yesterday you were not well, but I am very glad to find you are better to-day.
zio díre jéri ^[3]stare bene ma rallegrársi trováre méglío oggi.

You promised to write to me last week, but I am very sorry to observe
prométtete scrívere passáto settimána ma rincréscece vedére
you have forgot me.
che vi siete scordato di me.

[1] Render, *than you do not*.

[2] We use the verb *avére* instead of *éssere*, speaking of age. *Ex.* How old are you? *Quanti anni avete?*

[3] The verb *stare* must be used instead of *éssere*, in speaking of health.

*We always put **che** instead of **but** in English, with a negation before the Verb.*

[31]

I desired but one favour from you,^[1] and you refused it me.
chiédere favóre rícusáre.

If you would give me but one guinea at once, you would oblige me infinitely.
dare ghinéa alla volta obbligáre infinitaménte.

When one has little money, one ought to spend accordingly.
quando^[2] avére poco danáro dovére spéndere in conseguénza.

I ask you but what others give me.
domandáre altro dare.

You do nothing but laugh and play.
fare^[3] rídere giuocáre.

He does nothing but eat and drink.
mangiáre bere.

When others laugh, you do nothing but cry.
altro rídere fare piángere.

[1] *Non vi chiési che un favóre.*

[2] *When one has but, &c.* must be rendered by *quando non si ha che, &c.*

[3] *You do nothing but, &c.* render it by, *non fate altro che.*

On the Particles Relative ci and vi. The Particles Relative ci and vi, are put instead of there, within and in that.

I went yesterday to your house to see you, but your man told me you were not within.
venire jéri casa vedére ma servitore dire éssere

Indeed I was there almost all the afternoon; at what time did you come?
in verità quasi tutto dopo pranzo che ora veníre?

I went there at six o'clock.
sei

He was in the right to tell you that I was not within, for I was gone to visit a few friends
[1]avére dire éssere andáre visitáre alcúno amíco
in the square.
piázza.

[32]

My brother and sister are gone into the country.
fratello sorélla andáre campagna.

When did they go, I wish to know?
quando vorréi sapére?

They went yesterday morning.
andáre jéri mattína.

Is it long since you saw our regiment?
[2] vedére reggiménto?

It is two months, if I remember well.
due mese se ricordáre bene.

How long is it since you left France?
éssere lasciáre Fráncia?

It is five and twenty years, or thereabouts.
cinque venti anno incírca.

[1] To be in the right, is, *avere ragione.*

[2] Long, *molto tempo*, or *un pezzo.*

How to express some of it, or some of them. [See GRAMMAR p. 215.]

You have three horses, lend me one of them.
avére tre caválla prestátemene uno.

I have but two, one for myself, and the other for my man.
avére due me servitore.

I thought you had three (of them).
crédere avére tre.

To shew you that I have but two (of them), come with me into the stable, and you will not see
far vedére avére due veníre meco stalla vedére
any more (of them).
più.

I do not doubt it at all, I believe you.
dubitáre^[1] *crédere.*

[33]

I see very fine flowers in your garden, give me some.
vedére bello fióre giardino dare

I have not many, but what there are, are at your service.
avére molto ma quel^[2] *servízio.*

I have but fifteen or sixteen, as you see.
quindici sedici vedére.

You may take a dozen, if you please.
potére pigliáre dozzina piacére.

What will you have me do with them?
volére fare

You may give some to your daughters.
dare vostro figlia.

Do they talk of the war in your town?
^[3] *parláre guerra città?*

They talk of it all over the island.
tutto ísola.

And what do they think of our neighbours' intentions?
crédere vicíno intenzióne?

They know very little about them here.
sapére poco qui.

[1] *Non ne dubito punto.*

[2] See *Gram.* p. 151, on the conjugation of *there is*, &c.

[3] See *Gram.* p. 215, on *it is*, *they*, &c.

EXERCISES on the TENSES of the VERBS.

The Present Tense is when the Action of which one speaks, is present.

Sir, I come to have the honour to see you.
Signóre veníre avére onóre vedére.

I am infinitely obliged to you for this favour.
éssere infinitaménte obbligáre questo favóre.

How does the lady your mother do?
^[1] *stare signóra madre*

[34]

She is very well, sir, and presents her compliments to you.
stáre benissimo presentáre compliménto

I am her most humble servant, and am very glad to hear she is well.

Will you come and walk with me in the garden?
volére veníre spasseggiáre giardíno?

Pray excuse me, I cannot stay any longer.
pregáre scusáre potére restáre

You are always in great haste when you come to see me.
grande fretta veníre vedére.

I beg your pardon, sir, I have been here above an hour, and my sister is all alone at home.
mi perdoni qui circa ora sorélla tutto solo casa.

I am sorry you will not stay: I entreat you to present my most humble respects to the lady
^[2]*dispiacére volére rimanére supplicáre presentáre úmile rispétto signóra*
your mother.
madre.

[1] When we inquire after any body's health, we make use of the verb *stare*, instead of *fare*, or *essere*.

[2] An impersonal verb; *mi dispiáce che non vogliáte rimanére*.

The Imperfect Tense is when the Action of which one speaks, is going on, or is interrupted.

Sir, we were speaking of you, when you came in.
Signóre parláre quando entrare.

What were you saying of me, ladies?
che dire signóra?

We were saying that when you were in France, among the ladies, you were the most gallant,
dire quando essere Fráncia fra dame essere galánte
the most courteous, and the most complaisant gentleman in the world.
cortése compiacente signóre mondo.

I did not think, ladies, I was so happy as to be the subject of your conversation; and what
pensáre signóra avere la fortuna essere soggéto conversazióne
do you think I am now?
crédere

We believe that you are still very civil, and very complaisant; but not so gallant
crédere essere ancóra civile compiacénte ma galánte
as you were then.
essere.

Louis the XIVth was one of the greatest kings in the world; he was a lover of fine sciences,
Luígi^[1] grande Re mondo amatóre bello léttera
he did not love flatterers, neither did he always follow his own inclinations; and if he could not
amáre adulatóre sempre seguíre inclinazióne e se
get the victory over his enemies by the force of his arms, he would get it
guadagnáre vittória nemíco forza arma ottenére
by the number of his louis d'ors; in a word, he was a great politician.
número luígi d'oro in somma grande político.

[1] We also make use of the imperfect tense, when we speak in time past of the habitual qualities and actions of any person alive or dead.

The Perfect Definite is a Tense perfectly past, and often determined by an

Adverb of time past.

Where did you go yesterday, that you were not at home, when I went to see you?
dove andáre jéri éssere quando veníre vedére?

I went to see Mr. N. who is not well.
andáre vedére il signór stare

Did you meet with any company there?
trováre compagnía

Yes, sir, I met with his uncle and three of his sisters.
zio tre sorélla.

What was the subject of your conversation?
quale éssere soggetto conversazione?

We spoke of many different things.
parláre molto differente cosa.

Did you speak Italian with them?
Italiáno

Yes, all our conversation was in Italian.

TRANSCRIBER'S NOTE: No Italian translation was provided for this line.

[36]

Did they say you speak it well?
dire bene?

They said nothing about it.
niente

Did they not ask you of whom you learn?
domandáre chi imparáre?

Yes, I told them I was learning of you.

TRANSCRIBER'S NOTE: No Italian translation was provided for this line.

The emperor, Julius Cæsar, after he had conquered Britain, built a tower at London,
imperatóre Giúlio Césare dopo conquistáre Brettágna [1]edificáre torre Londra
but he continued not there; he appointed rulers in his stead, and returned from London
restáre constituíre governatóre vece ritornáre Londra
to Rome.
Roma.

Henry the VIIIth, king of England, regarded not the bulls and threatenings
Enrico ottávo Re Inghilterra badáre bolla mináccia
which came from Italy; he violently shook off the papal power, though he retained
veníre Italia violenteménte scuótere papále potére ritenére
the Roman religion.
Románo reliigióne.

[1] We also make use of the perfect definite, when we speak of the transactions of persons who are dead.

I am very glad to see you, for your brother told me you were gone to France.
rallegrársi vedére fratello dire

'Tis true I was resolved to go there, if my father had given me money enough
vero risólvete andáre [1] padre avére dare danáro
to make that journey.
fare viággio.

Had he given you leave to go there?
avére dáre licénza andáre?

Yes, and he gave me fifty guineas to make my journey.
si dare cinquánta ghinéa fare viággio.

If he had given me thirty more, I should have gone to Paris to pass the summer.
[2] avére dare trenta essere andáre Parígi passáre estáte.

If you had come to see me, I would have lent you some.
veníre vedére avére prestáre

I am much obliged to you for it.
éssere molto obbligáto

When you had a mind to go to France, were you resolved to set out without taking leave of
quando pensare andáre Fráncia risólvete partíre senza licenziársi
your friends?
amico?

No, sir, I had already taken leave of several.
no signóre essere digiá licenziársi da molto.

Very well, but you had forgotten me.
beníssimo ma scordársi.

I am sorry you have so bad an opinion of me.
dispiacére cattívo opiníone

[1] *Gram.* p. 206, on *if* before that tense.

[2] See *Gram.* p. 206, on the particle *if* before the imperfect indicative.

On the Future, or time to come.

When will you go into the country?
quando andáre campágná?

I believe I shall go there to-morrow.
crédere andáre dománi.

Will you stay long there?
restáre un pezzo?

No, sir, I shall stay but two or three weeks.
due o tre settimána.

How will you spend your time when you are there?
passáre tempo quando [1] éssere

I'll go and see my friends, and I will divert myself with those who receive me kindly.
andáre vedére amíco divertíre [2]ricévere corteseménte.

Will you not carry some books with you?
portáre libro

No, for I am sure while I am there, I shall have no time to read.
perchè sicúro mentre⁴³¹ avére tempo léggere.

You will forget all your Italian.
scordársi tutto Italiano.

I am certain I shall not, for I will not stay long there.
certo di no restáre molto

When once you are there, your friends will not permit you to leave them so soon.
una volta⁴⁴ éssere amíco permettere lasciáre così presto.

You shall see that I'll be here next Sunday, and that my friends will not have so much power over me as you think.
vedére éssere qui próssimo Doménica amíco avére tanto potére pensáre.

What will you bring me from the country?
portáre campáña?

I'll bring you some partridges, a hare, and some pheasants.
portáre pernice lepre fagiáno.

I shall be obliged to you for them.
éssere obbligáto

- [1] *When you are there, render, when you shall be there.*
 [2] *Ricevere, must be in the future, third person plural.*
 [3] *Render, while I shall be there, mentre starò là.*
 [4] *Render, when once you shall be there, quando una volta ci saréte.*

On the Imperative, or Mood that commands.

Go from me to my lady; present my respects to her: give her this letter,
andáre signóra presentáre rispétto dare questo léttera
 and bring me an answer; should she not be at home, stay till she comes back.
portáre rispósta éssere casa restáre ritornáre.

[39]

Speak Italian with me, pronounce well, begin again, read softly, repeat your lesson, go.
parláre Italiáno meco pronunziáre ricominciáre leggere adágio ripétere lezióne coraggio.

On the Construction of VERBS.

The Auxiliary Verb avére, requires an accusative Case.

You have a son who has the finest qualities in the world; he has a sweet countenance,
avére figlio bello qualità mondo avére piacévole fisionomia
 a great deal of civility, and very obliging manners; in short, he has the love of every body,
molto civiltà cortése maniera affetto tutto

and you are happy in having such a son.
éssere fortunato

A man is very happy who has the fear of God and the love of his neighbours, though
uómo molto felice timóre Dio amóre prossimo ^[1]*benchè*
he should not have the riches of fortune.
richézza fortuna.

Those who have wealth, and have no charity for the poor, shall not share God's mercy.
avére ^[2]*richézza carità povero partecipáre Dio misericordia.*

A man that has wit, and no behaviour, is despicable.
uómo spírito condóttá sprezzábile.

I have scholars who have sense, and are diligent; but I have others who are dull,
scoláro giudizio éssere diligénte altro che ottusi
and very idle.
pígro.

If you have good manners, civility and complaisance, you will be loved by every body.
avére buóno maniera civiltà compiacénza éssere amáto tutto.

[40]

[1] *Benchè* governs the subjunctive mood.

[2] See *Gram.* p. 211, on the articles *del, dello, della, &c.*

Sometimes the Verb avére is used instead of éssere, especially when we speak of cold, heat, hunger, thirst, or of the age of any one.

I was very cold when I came, but am very warm now.
avére freddo veníre avére caldo adesso.

You eat as if you were not hungry.
mangiáre come se avére fame.

I beg your pardon, I eat heartily; for I was very hungry.
domandáre perdóno mangiáre di buón gusto avére molto appetito.

Are you not thirsty yet?
avére sete ancóra?

Yes, sir, I am very thirsty, but I won't drink yet; for if I drink when I am hungry,
si, signóre avére gran sete ma volére bere ancóra se bevére quando avére fame
it prevents me from eating.
impedíre mangiáre.

How old is your uncle?
quanto anno avére zio?

He is not yet seventy years old.
avére ancóra settánta anno.

You surprise me, I thought he was eighty.
sorpréndere crédere avére ottánta.

And you, sir, how old are you?
e signóre anno avére?

I am not twenty yet.
avére venti ancóra.

On the Verb Substantive *essere*. *The Verb Substantive essere requires the following noun in the Nominative Case.*

[41]

Our master is diligent; but I have been hitherto very idle; I have done as the drones.
nostro maestro essere diligénte essere stato sinóra pigro avére fatto come cacchióne.

I have lost my parents' love, who always provided all things necessary for me:
avére pérdere genitóre affetto che mi hanno sempre fornire tutto necessário
I have been unworthy of their care; but I will deserve to be called the most diligent
éssere stato indégno cura ma volére meritáre éssere chiamáre diligénte
of all our scholars for the time to come.
tutto scoláro all'avvenire.

The lion is accounted the most generous of animals, because he is more placable
leóne passáre per generóso animale perchè placábile
than the others.
altro.

The sanguinary minds of some men are more barbarous than wild beasts. Man is a creature
sanguinário animo uómo éssere barbaro fiera Uómo creatúra
of upright body: when he is old, his body bends towards the earth; and his soul ascends
dritto corpo quando vécchio corpo inchinársi verso terra ánima ascéndere
to heaven, which is his habitation for ever.
ciélo dimóra.

How are you this morning? I am very well, thank you.
come stare mattina? stare benissimo grazie.

How do your father and mother do?
^[1]*stare padre madre*

I hope my father is well. He was well the last time I saw him, but my mother has not been well [42]
speráre padre stare bene último volta vedére ma madre éssere stato bene
these two or three days. And how are you, sir?
^[2]*due tre giòrno stare signóre?*

I should be well enough, if I had money.
stare ene abbastanza ^[3]*se avére danáro.*

I hope your lady is well.
speráre signóra stare bene.

She is perfectly well, at your service.
stare perfettaménte bene servízio.

I am very glad to hear she is so well.
rallegrársi sentíre stare così bene.

What weather is it to-day, I wish to know?
^[4]*tempo fare oggi* ^[5]*volére sapére?*

It is the finest weather in the world.
bello mondo.

Is it hotter in Spain than in Italy?
fare caldo Spagna Itália?

It is hotter there in summer, but it is very cold in winter.
fare estate ma fare freddo inverno.

If it is fine weather to-morrow, we will go in the country.
fare bello tempo domani andare campagna.

I believe it will not be fine weather, for it is very dark to-night.
credere fare bello tempo perchè oscuro questa sera.

[1] When we inquire after any one's health, we make use of the verb *stare*, instead of *fare*.

[2] These two or three days, *i. e. da due o tre giorni in quà.*

[3] If I had money, *Se avessi danari*, and not *avevo*.

[4] When we speak of the weather, we use the third person singular of the verb *fare*, instead of the verb *essere*.

[5] Use the optative mood, and say, *vorrei*.

Personal Verbs governing a Genitive Case.

The Verb aver pietà governs the Genitive.

I have no pity on the misery of those, who being young and strong, love better to beg
avere pietà della miseria essere giovine forte amare accattare
from door to door, than to work for their bread; but I pity much the blind, and old people, [43]
porta in che lavorare per guadagnarsi pane ma avere pietà cieco i vecchi
who are incapable of doing any thing for their living.
essere incapace fare alcuna cosa vitto.

I pity my brother, I pity his folly, for he has wasted all the fortune my father left him.
avere pietà fratello pazzia perchè dilapidare tutto patrimonio padre lasciare.

The verb burlarsi governs the Genitive.

Men are often inclined to laugh at others' misfortunes, instead of having pity on them.
uómo essere spesso inclinato burlarsi di altri disgrazia in vece di avere pietà.

Those who call themselves Christians, and do not live according to their religion, mock God
quello che chiamarsi Cristiáno non vivere secondo religione burlarsi Iddío
and his doctrine.
dottrina.

Do not jeer at others' poverty, for you do not know how long fortune will be favourable
burlarsi altro povertà non sapere quanto tempo fortuna essere favorevole
to you; and if you should become poor, every one would laugh at you.
e se diventare povero ognuno ridersi di.

It is a great mark of folly to laugh at every thing.
essere grande segno pazzia ridere di tutto.

The verb pentirsi governs the Genitive.

If you repent sincerely for the fault you have committed, God will forgive you; for he does not
se pentirsi sinceramente colpa avere commesso Iddío perdonare perchè
love the death of a sinner, but he will have him to repent of his sins. [44]
amare morte peccatore volere pentirsi peccato.

It is not enough to say, I repent of my ill conduct, and of my bad life, if you do not shew

non bastáre *dire* *pentírsi cattívo condóttá* *mala vita* *se mostráre*
the effects of your repentance by a new and better life.
effétto *pentiménto* *nuóvo* *migliór vita.*

The verb rallegrarsi governs the Genitive.

A good Christian ought never to rejoice at others' misfortunes.
buóno Cristiáno *dovére mai* *rallegrársi* *altro disgrázia.*

I rejoice at the good success you had in your business.
rallegrársi *buóno ruscíta* *avére* *affare.*

Come and rejoice with me at the good news I received to-day.
veníre *meco* *buóno nuóva* *ricévere* *oggi.*

How will you have me rejoice at a thing I do not know?
come volére *rallegrársi* *cosa* *non sapére?*

Tell me first of all what news I must rejoice at.
dire *avanti ogni cosa* *nuóva* *dovére rallegrársi.*

The verb ricordársi governs the Genitive.

Do you remember the promise you made me yesterday?
ricordársi *proméssa* *fare* *jéri?*

I do not remember it at all. Do you not remember the sum of money you said
non ricordársi *affatto* *somma danáro* *dire*
you would lend me?
prestáre?

I assure you I had forgotten it, I remember it very well now.
assicuráre *avére scordáto* *ricordársi* *beníssimo* *adéssó.*

The verb languíre requires a Genitive case.

He who languishes with thirst, gives greater thanks to the man who offers him water,
quello languíre *di sete* *réndere grande grázia* *offeríre acqua*
than if a prince gave him a crown.
che se príncipe *dare coróna.*

The man who languishes for love ought to be pitied.
uómo *languíre* *amóre* *dovére compíanto.*

The verbs obbedíre and disobbedíre require a Dative.

We ought not only to obey our parents, but also our superiors, if we would obey
dovére non solo *obbedíre* *genitori* *ma anche* *superióre* *se volére obbedíre*
God's commands.
comandaménto.

One sees very seldom a child prosper in this world, who does not obey his father and mother.
si vedére raraménte *figliuolo prosperáre* *mondo* *obbedíre* *padre madre.*

When God commanded Abraham to sacrifice Isaac, his only son, he immediately obeyed
quando Iddío comandáre *Abramo sacrificáre Isácco* *único figlio* *súbito obbedíre*
the Lord's voice; but the angel of the Lord did not permit him to slay the child, and told him
Signóre voce *ma ángelo Signóre* *perméttere* *uccidere fanciullo* *dire*

his obedience had been agreeable to God.
obbediènza éssere stato grato Dio.

The verb parláre will have a Dative Case of the Person.

God speaks to sinners sometimes most gently, that he may draw them to obedience;
Iddío parláre peccatóre qualche volta benignamente affine di trárre obbediènza
he speaks to them of the blessed life which he has prepared for his servants; sometimes
parláre beáta vita avére preparáto servo qualche volta
he speaks to them of the abyss which shall be the reward of sin; yet his promises [46]
parláre abisso éssere mercéde peccáto pure proméssa
and threatenings move not stubborn minds.
mináccia muóvere ostináto mente.

The verbs preténdere and aspiráre govern the Dative Case.

All those who call themselves Christians pretend to everlasting life; but few
tutto quello chiamársi Cristiáno preténdere etérno vita ma pochi
are they that would suffer the least thing to deserve it; but if it is a point to aspire to
sono soffrírre minimo cosa meritáre se si tratta aspiráre
some employment, or dignity, there is none but would suffer a great deal of fatigue, labour,
qualche impiégo dignità non vi è nissúno che non sopporti molto fática lavóro
and pain to obtain it.
pena

The verb giuocáre (when one speaks of all sorts of games) governs the Dative Case.

I do not love to play at games of chances, as at cards, or at dice, but I love to play sometimes
amáre giuocáre giuóco azzardo come carta dadi ma amáre giuocáre qualche volta
at bowls, at billiards, at tennis, or at nine-pins.
bocce bigliárdo pallacórda o birilli.

Do you never play at cards, at chess, or draughts?
mai giuocáre carte scacchi dama?

I play sometimes at piquet to please the company.
giuocáre picchétto far piacére compagnía.

[47]

Verbs governing an Accusative Case of the Person, and a Genitive of the Thing.

The verbs accusáre, biasimáre, avvertíre, and assólvere, will have the Accusative of the Person, and the Genitive of the Thing.

One boy accuses another of idleness; the master hears their tales, but punishes
ragázzo accusáre altro pigrízia maéstro sentíre stória ma puníre
him only whom he thinks guilty and deserving of punishment.
solaménate quello crédere colpévole degno castígo.

Every one blames you for your negligence and ignorance.
tutti biasimáre negligénza ignoránza.

I often admonished you of your duty; if you do not improve as well as others, it is not my fault.
spesso avvertíre vostro dovére se profitáre come altro non è colpa.

When a judge acquits a man of a crime he is guilty of, if he commits again the same fault,
quando giúdice assólvere uno delítto reo se comméttere di nuovo stesso fallo
he deserves a double punishment.
merita dóppio castígo.

The verb condannare governs the Accusative of the Person, and the Genitive of the Thing; but when it signifies to condemn to death, the name of the punishment ought to be put in the Dative Case.

Every one condemns you very much for the action you committed the other day.
ogn'uno condannare molto azione commettere altro giorno.

During the persecution in France, many brave gentlemen were condemned, some to the
nel tempo della persecuzione Francia molto bravo cavaliere condannare
galleys, and some to the galleys, for the defence of their religion.
forca^[1] galera difesa religione.

[48]

[1] Nouns ending in *ca* and *ga*, make *che* and *ghe* in the plural, as *forca, forche; pága, paghe.*

The verb ottenere will have an Accusative of the Thing, and an Ablative of the Person.

A scholar who obtains his master's favour is more happy than he who is idle,
scoláro ottenere maestro favóre piú felice pigro
who loses his honour, wastes his time, and continues a blockhead, though play be pleasant
pérdere onóre consumare tempo continuare ad essere sciocco benchè giuoco essere piacevole
to him for a little while.
poco.

Verbs governing an Accusative Case of the Dative.

The verbs invitare, esortare, will have an Accusative of the Person, and a Dative of the Thing.

God invites sinners to eternal happiness, he calls them to repentance, he speaks
Iddio invitare peccatóre eterno felicità chiamare pentimento parlare
most graciously to them.
benignamente

He has prepared for penitent sinners all that belongs to blessedness, all that they can desire.
preparare penitente peccatóre tutto appartenere felicità tutto potere bramare.

Remember your master's words; he exhorts you to industry, which is beneficial to yourselves;
ricordarsi maestro parola esortare industria essere vantaggioso
your pains shall produce a great advantage; he uses his best endeavours for your benefit;
lavóro produrre grande vantaggio fare ogni suo sforzo utile
be not your own enemies.
essere di voi stessi nemico.

Paragonare requires an Accusative of the first Noun, (either of the Person or of the Thing) and the other in the Dative.

[49]

If we compare the longest life to eternity, it is very short.
se paragonare lungo vita eternità corto.

If we compare the happiest condition of this world to everlasting life, it is miserable, and
comparare felice condizione mondo eterno vita miserabile
not worthy our desire. If we compare the number of good men to the multitude of wicked,
indegno desiderio paragonare número buono moltitudine malvagio
it is small.
píccolo.

Dare and restituire will have an Accusative of the Thing, and a Dative of the Person.

I will soon give my mother the money she entrusted me with.
presto dare madre danáro confidáre

God will give a reward to those men who please him, and to those whom he has set up
Iddío dare mercéde quello piacére quello che avére costituito
governors of the world.
governatóre mondo.

I returned my master the book which I borrowed; he lent it to me, and it was my duty
restituire maéstro libro prender ad impréstito prestáre éssere dovére
to read it, and not to keep it; though books delight me very much, I ought to restore them
leggere tenére benchè^[1] libro piacére moltíssimo dovére restituire
to those whom they belong to.
quello cui appartenére.

[1] *Benchè* governs the subjunctive mood. See *Gram.* p. 209.

These verbs dovére, prométtere, and pagáre, will have an Accusative of the Thing, and a Dative of the Person.

[50]

I owe him money, because I promised to pay him another man's debt; but at present
dovére danáro perchè prométtere pagáre altro débito ma adésso
I have myself need of money, that I may pay what I owe to my creditors.
avére io stesso bisógno danáro pagáre dovére creditóre.

When will you pay me what you owe me?
quando volére pagáre dovére?

I promise you I will pay it to you next week.
prométtere pagáre próssimo settimána.

Insegnáre requires an Accusative of the Thing, and a Dative of the Person.

I have been twelve years in this country, during which time I have had the honour of teaching
[1]éssere stato dódici anno paése nel quale tempo avére avúto onóre insegnáre
several ladies and gentlemen the Italian language. Masters ought to teach children
molta signóra signóre Italiáno maéstro dovére insegnáre ragázzo
not only the things which concern science; but they ought also to teach them things
non solaménte cosa risguardáre sciénza ma dovére anche insegnáre cosa
which concern their soul and their salvation: for science without religion is
risguardáre ánima salvazióne perchè scienza
an unprofitable thing.
inutile.

[1] I have been twelve years in this country; render, *Sono dódici anni che sto in questo paése.*

[51]

Of the construction of the Infinitive, with the preposition *di*.

When after the verbs astenérsi, consideráre, and avvertíre, there follows an Infinitive, it ought to be put with the Preposition di.

Rash men often propose to do things which are above their capacity. A man that abstains
temerário uómo spesso propórsi fare cosa éssere superióre capacità uómo astenérsi

from eating and drinking to excess, from swearing, and keeping bad company, may be called
mangiáre bere all'eccéssu bestemmiáre frequentáre compagnía potere chiamáre
an honest man.
onésto uómo.

I thought of going this morning to see Mr. — but a friend of mine advised me
pensáre andáre questa mattina vedére il Signór — ma amíco consigliáre
not to go there.
andáre.

I had a mind to advise you not to keep company with that man who brought this trouble
avére voglia consigliáre andáre compagnía uómo causáre disturbo
upon you; but I since resolved to say nothing about it, for fear of disobliging you.
ma poi risolvérsi dire niente per timóre dispiacére.

The verbs supplicáre, consigliáre, incaricársi, and costringere, will have an Infinitive with the Preposition di.

I have a mind to compel Mr. — to pay me the money he owes me; nevertheless
avére voglia costringere il Signór — pagáre danáro dovére nulladiméno
I should be very glad not to put him to trouble, because he has always been my friend:
avére a caro non dare briga perchè éssere sempre stato amíco
what do you advise me to do in this case?
consigliáre fare caso?

I beg of you to have a little patience; I take the charge to get you your money.
pregáre avére paziénza incaricársi ricuperáre danáro.

[52]

The verbs proibíre, desideráre, differíre, procuráre, impedíre, speráre, fingere, affrettársi, require also an Infinitive with the Preposition di.

God forbids us to sin, nevertheless we never desist from offending him, we always defer
Iddío proibíre peccáre nulladiméno mai desístere offéndere sempre differíre
obeying his voice; we seem to strive to disobey him in every thing. If we hope to share
obbedíre voce parére procuráre disobbedíre ogni cosa speráre avére parte
in the merits of our blessed Saviour's sufferings, let nothing hinder us from beginning this day
mérito beáto Salvatóre patimenti niénte impedíre principiáre oggi
to use all our endeavours to deserve it; let us make haste to begin the great work
fare tutto sforzo meritáre affrettársi principiáre grande ópera
of our salvation; let us not feign to be converted, but let us convert ourselves in good earnest,
salvazióne fingere éssere convertíto convertíre da davvéro
for nobody can deceive God.
nessúno potére ingannáre

The verbs meditáre, parláre, perméttre, prométtre, propórre, presúmere, préténdere, protestáre, rifiutáre, risólvere, auguráre, will also have an Infinitive with the Preposition di, after them.

Never meditate to do any wrong to your neighbour. When you speak of undertaking
mai meditáre fare torto próssimo quando parláre intrapréndere
some great thing, permit me to tell you, that you ought to consult your friends
grande cosa perméttre dire dovére amíco
before you begin it.
prima cominciáre.

[53]

Never promise to do any thing, unless you are sure to do it.
mai prométtre fare cosa se non éssere sicúro fáre.

Never presume to have more understanding than those who have the care of your conduct.
presúmere avére intendiménto che quello cura condóttá.

Do not pretend ever to prosper in this world, if you have not the fear of God.
preténdere mai prosperáre mondo se avére timóre Dio.

If you protest to God with an humble and sincere heart to amend your life, he will receive you among his children.
protestáre úmíle sincéro cuóre emendáre vita ricévere fra figliuólo.

Never refuse to do a good office to your friends, when it is in your power.
rifutáre réndere servízio amíco potére.

Do you desire to pass for an honest man? Endeavour to do all you can to oblige every body.
desideráre passáre galántuómo procuráre fare tutto potére obbligáre chicchessia.

When there follows after the Verb avére either of these substantives permissióne, desidério, vóglia, cura, costúme, bisógno, motivo, ragióne, torto, dritto, occasióne, the following Verb must be put in the Infinitive with the Preposition di.

I believe you have a mind to play; but I will not give you leave to go out till you have done your exercise. You are in the right, sir, to forbid me to go out, and I am in the wrong to desire it—I have no cause to be angry with you, for it is not your custom to be idle.
crédere avére vóglia giuocáre ma volére dare permissióne uscire ^[1]finchè avére fare esercizio ^[2]ragióne signóre proibirmi d'andar fuori ^[3]torto desideráre motivo éssere cóllera éssere costúme pigro.

[54]

[1] *Finchè* governs the subjunctive mood.

[2] You are in the right, sir, *Ella ha ragióne.*

[3] I am in the wrong, sir, *ho torto.*

When a Verb is followed by l'opportunità, l'occasione, il tempo, il mezzo, la volontà, il cuóre, il potére, l'autorità, that Verb ought to be put in the Infinitive with the Preposition di.

When I have an opportunity to see your father, I will tell him how much you deserve to be praised for your uncommon diligence.
quando ^[1]avére occasione vedére padre dire quanto meritáre éssere lodáto straordinario diligénza.

Whilst we have it in our power to acquire knowledge, let us improve such precious opportunity.
mentre ^[2]avére potére acquistáre cognizióne profittáre tale prezioso opportunità.

I wonder how men have the heart to hate one another.
maravigliársi uómo avére cuóre odiársi gli uni gli altri.

God has given to kings power to command, and to judges authority to judge.
Iddio dáre Re potére comandáre giúdice autorità giudicáre.

[1] *I have*, put it in the future, and say, *avrò.*

[2] *We have it*, is changed into *it is* for the Italian idiom.

When after the Verb substantive éssere there follows either of these nouns conténto, obbligáto, in pena, sul punto, in perícolo, the following Verb is to be put in the Infinitive with the Preposition di.

I am very glad to hear that you overcame your enemies, and I should have been sorry

[55]

éssere conténto sentire vincere nemíco ^[1]*rincrésccere*
to have heard the contrary.
sentire contrário.

I return you many thanks for your friendship, for I was in danger of losing my suit.
réndere molto grázia amicízia perchè éssere in pérícolo pérdere lite.

I was anxious to know what had happened to you; and if you had not come,
ansióso sapére succédere se éssere venire

I was on the point of going to see you.
éssere sul punto venire vedére.

[1] I should have been sorry; *mi sarébbe rincresciúto.*

The Verbs *avvezzársi, impiegáre, incoraggíre, eccitáre, invitáre, esibírsi, dilettársi, tenérsi pronto, lavoráre, will have after them an Infinitive with the Preposition a, or ad before a vowel.*

We ought to employ the days of our life in preparing ourselves for the other world.
dovere impiegáre giòrno vita preparársi altro mondo.

Masters who use mildness in teaching their scholars, encourage them more to learn well than those who use too much severity. An honest man takes always pleasure in obliging his friends.
maéstro usáre dolcezza insegnáre scoláro incoraggíre imparáre bene usáre troppo severità onéstó uómo dilettársi sempre favorire amíco.

The love of God invites us to love one another.
amóre Dío invitáre amáre

Let us keep ourselves in readiness to appear before the living God.
tenérsi pronto comparíre innánzi vivénte Dío.

Let us labour continually to obtain eternal life.
lavoráre continuaménte ottenére etérna vita.

When vi è, or v'è, precedes the Adverb niénte, the next Verb must be in the Infinitive with the Preposition da, or a.

[56]

There is nothing to fear in serving God.
non vi è niénte temére ^[1]*servíre Iddío.*

There is nothing to say to what you have done.
non v'è niénte dire avére fatto.

There is nothing to do in that at present.
niénte fare adéssó.

There is nothing so easy to learn as the Italian language.
niénte cosi fáccile imparáre Italiáno lingua.

[1] In serving God, *nel servíre Iddío.*

When an Adverb of quantity follows v'è, it requires an Infinitive with the Preposition a, or da.

There is a great deal of satisfaction in teaching diligent boys,
v'è gran^[1] *soddisfazione insegnare diligente ragazzo*
 but there is a great deal of trouble in instructing idle scholars.
gran incomodo istruire pigro scolaro.

There is a great deal to say against the conduct of wicked people; but there is nothing
v'è molto dire contro condotta malvagio gente non v'è niente
 to say against the conduct of honest people.
dire contro condotta onesto gente.

[1] See Gram. p. 210, a great deal of.

On the ENGLISH PARTICIPLE in ING.

When the English Participle in ing comes after a Verb of motion with the Preposition a before it, we use the corresponding substantive, instead of the Verb, though sometimes the latter.

He who goes a hunting or visiting his friends, when business requires his care and time,
quello che andare caccia ^[1] *visitare amico* *quando affare richiedere* *cura tempo*
 shows by his conduct that he prefers his diversion before his profit,
mostrare condotta ^[2] *preferire* *divertimento* *profitto*
 the company of his friends before the advantage of his family.
compagnia amico *vantaggio* *famiglia.*

[57]

The boy who goes a playing with his school-fellows, when he ought to be diligently employed
ragazzo andare giuocare *condiscipolo* *quando dovere essere diligentemente intorno*
 at the task his master gave him, evinces, by his neglect, that he prefers play to
a lavoro maestro assegnare provare negligenza preferire giuoco
 his master's love, and his own profit.
maestro affetto *profitto.*

[1] Ibid. p. 201, on verbs of motion.

[2] Preferisce il divertimento al profitto, la compagnia degli amici al, &c.

The English Participle in ing, after from, must be put in Italian in the Infinitive with the Preposition di.

The providence of God keeps us from perishing; the power of God hinders us from doing
provvidenza Dio impedire perire *potenza Dio impedire fare*
 those things which displease him; the grace of God prevents us from sinning;
cosa dispiacere grazia Dio impedire peccare
 the goodness of God preserves us from suffering afflictions.
bontà preservare soffrire *afflizione.*

The English Participle in ing after a Verb importing to cease, to leave, or to go over, must be rendered in Italian by the Infinitive mood with the Preposition di.

He who leaves off doing praise-worthy actions, and plunges into vice, was never truly good.
quello che cessare fare *lodévole azione* *immergersi vizio* *essere mai veramente buono.*

A wise man never leaves off learning whilst he lives; for he who has great wisdom,
savio uomo mai tralasciare imparare *finchè vivere* *perchè è dotato di grande sapere*
 has still need of more knowledge.
ancora bisógno maggiore conoscenza.

[58]

When the Participle in ing follows the auxiliary Verb to be, this verb must be left out, and the Italian Verb that represents the Participle, must be put in

the same tense, number, and person as the auxiliary is.

A diligent boy is always learning, not only while the master is instructing, but also while
diligénte ragázzo sempre studiare non solaménte mentre maéstro istruíre ma anche
other boys are playing.
altro ragázzo giuocáre.

Apelles was daily drawing some excellent pictures with wonderful art; no day passed
Apélle ogni giòrno dipingere eccellénte pittúra maraviglióso arte nessúno giòrno passáre
without a line.
senza linéa.

Those who do not employ their time well in the beginning of their lives,
impiegáre bene tempo ^[1] *principio vita*
will be perpetually lamenting their folly; they will be incessantly condemning themselves, and
perpetuamente piangere pazzia ad ogni moménte condannársi
saying, Ah! at what a price would I not purchase the time past!
díre Ah! prezzo compráre tempo passato!

[1] In the beginning of their lives; *i. e. nella loro gioventù.*

[59]

Of the PARTICIPLE past.

When one of these Pronouns che, il, lo, la, &c. meets before the compound tenses, the Pronoun ought to agree with the Participle in gender and number.

I received the books which my brother sent me; I read them all, they are very good,
ricévere libro fratélló mandáre léggere tutto éssere buóno
and well written.
bene scrítto.

The letter which my father wrote to me is very severe; I showed it to my mother, and
léttera padre scrivere éssere sevéro mostráre madre
she is very sorry for it.
^[1] *dispiacére.*

[1] She is very sorry for it; *glíene dispiáce moltíssimo.*

When these Pronouns, mio, me, te, noi, voi, &c. are the case of the Verb, they must agree with the Participle in gender and in number.

My dear friends, I have always loved you like my children, I have often admonished you
caro amíco avére sempre amáto come figlio avére spesso ammoníre
for your own good; I have several times exhorted you to practise virtue; if you are not
proprio bene spesse volte esortáre praticáre virtù se
truly virtuous, it is not my fault.
veraménte virtuóso éssere colpa.

I met your brother this morning, we embraced one another like good friends, and I rejoice that
incontráre fratélló mattína abbracciársi da buóno amíco ralleggrársi
we are reconciled.
riconciliársi.

The books which I have seen you reading are not good.
libro avére vedére léggere buóno.

These are all the copies which you have given me to write.

[60]

Your brothers have done quite the contrary of what I had advised them to do.
fratéllo fare tutto contrario avére consigliáre fare.

On ADVERBS.

[See GRAM. p. 209.]

Adverbs are generally put after the Verb, and in compound tenses between the Verb and the Participle.

It is a lamentable thing to see youths with much wit, and a good disposition to learn,
doloroso cosa vedére giovane di molto spirito buóno disposizióne imparáre
take but little pains to answer the expectations of their parents.
pigliáre poco pena ^[1]rispóndere aspettazióne genitori.

[1] *Rispondere governs the dative case of the thing.*

Adverbs of Interrogation must always be put before the Verb.

Where did you come from? Why did you not stay for me?
da dove veníre perchè aspettáre?

When will you have done laughing at your friends?
quando cessáre burláre amíco?

Why did you say, I had promised you to go in the country?
perchè dire promettere andáre campágná?

Where is your father? Is he in town?
dove padre éssere città?

Where did you buy this fine horse?
compráre bello cavállo?

I bought it at the last country fair.
compráre último campágná fiéra.

Where are the ladies your sisters?
éssere signóra sorélla?

I believe they are gone out to take an airing.
crédere éssere uscíto pigliar aria.

Whither are you going so fast? You are in great haste.
andáre così avére gran fretta.

I go to Mr. Clement's house, for I heard my brother is there, and I have some business
andáre dal signóre Clemente^[1] perchè sentíre fratéllo avére qualche cosa
with him.
da fare con lui.

You are mistaken, he is not there; for I met him just now, and he told me he was going to
ingannársi éssere là incontráre un momento fa dire andáre
his sister's house.
sorélla.

I was going to your house; but since I met you, we will go to my house, where we shall dine.
andáre ma giacchè incontráre andáre dove pranzáre.

I beg you will excuse me, indeed I cannot; for I must go to my lady Arabella's, to pay a visit to her children.
pregáre scusáre in verità non potére bisógno andáre signóra Arabélla fare vísita figlio.

They are not at home, for I saw them going into the park.
éssere casa perchè vedere andáre parco.

Let us go then and see if your brothers are at home.
andáre dunque vedére se fratéllo casa.

They are not, I know they are gone a hunting.
éssere sapére éssere andáto cacciá.

What is the matter with you, sir? You seem to be grieved.
cosa ha signóre parére essere afflitto.

O no, sir, I am not, but I come from Mr. Vincent's, who is very ill.
non sono afflitto veníre Vincenzo ammaláto.

You surprise me, for as I was coming from my house, I met his brother, who did not mention it to me.
sorprendere perchè veníre casa incontráre fratéllo parlare

[62]

Do you know from whence he was coming, when you met him?
sapére di dove veníre quando incontráre?

I believe he was coming from his own house.
crédere veníre casa.

Can you tell me where he is gone?
potére dire dove éssere andáto?

I was assured that he is set out for his uncle's country-house.
éssere assicuráto éssere partito zio casa di campágná.

Which way did you pass, in your way to Italy,
per dove passáre quando andáre Itália?

I passed by Rouen, Paris, Orleans and Lyons.
passáre Roano Parígi Orleáno Lióne.

Which way did you come back to England?
per dove tornáre Inghilterra?

I returned by Germany and Holland.
ritornáre Germánia Olánda.

[1] *At, or to, before house or home, must be rendered by da, dal, or in casa. See Gram. p. 209.*

These Prepositions di diétro, vicíno, intórno, dirimpétto, infíno, will have a Dative after them.

Sir, if I knew where you live, I would take the liberty to go and pay you a visit.
signóre ^[1]*se sapére* *dove stare di casa* *piigliáre libertà* ^[2]*veníre fare vísita.*

Sir, you would give yourself too much trouble; however, if you do me that favour,
dare *troppo incómodo* *però se* *fare favóre*
 you shall be very welcome; I live near the Temple, opposite Chancery-lane.
éssere il benvenúto *stare vicíno Témpio* *dirimpétto*

I believe my best way to go to your house is to pass by London-bridge.
crédere che la miglior strada che possa fare per veníre da voi sia di passáre Londra ponte

[63]

You are in the right, sir, since you live behind the Tower.
avére ragióne *giacchè* *stare di diétro Torre.*

A poor labourer that works from morning till night (when he is well paid for his labour) lives
póvero lavoránte *travagliáre* *matína infíno sera* *quando éssere bene pagáto* *lavóro* *vívire*
 more content and satisfied, than those who have great riches.
conténto sodisfátto *avére gran richézza.*

He who shall be constant even to death, shall have the crown of glory.
éssere *costánte infíno morte* *avére* *coróna glória.*

[1] See *Gram.* p. 202, on *se* before a preterimperfect.

[2] *Ibid.* p. 203, when we use *veníre* instead of *andare*.

On CONJUNCTIONS which require the SUBJUNCTIVE after them.

[See GRAM. p. 204.]

The following Conjunctions prima che, acciocchè, finchè, per paura che, sin che, benchè, purchè, a meno che, Iddío voglia che, require the Subjunctive after them.

You will speak Italian well, provided you take pains; I tell you so, that
parláre *Italiáno bene* *purchè* *darsi pena* *direacciochè* *acciochè*
 you may take courage, and learn well.
piigliáre corággio *imparáre bene.*

I remember I told you several times that you will never write Italian correctly, unless
ricordársi dire *parécchie volte* *mai scrívere* *Italiáno correttaménte* *a meno che*
 you study the rules.
studiáre regola.

I will take so much pains, that I hope I shall write it well before next summer.
darsi pena *sperare* *scrívere* *prima* *próssimo state.*

You will soon perceive the effects of it, provided you follow my directions, though you think
présto accorgérsi *effétto* *purchè* *seguíre suggerimento* *benchè* *sembrare*
 the Italian tongue is very difficult.
Italiáno lingua *éssere difficile.*

[64]

Please God it may be as you say; for it would be a great satisfaction to me.
piáccia Iddío *éssere come dire* *perchè* *éssere* *grande soddisfazióne*

I esteem a man very unhappy that has not the fear of God, though he should possess
stimáre uno molto infelice avére timóre Iddío benchè possédere
 all the treasures in the world, even though he should have all the other fine qualities
tutto tesóro mondo benchè avére altro bello qualità
 that can make a man perfect.
potére réndere úno perfetto.

I always praised you very much before you became so idle; and I told you several times
sempre lodáre molto prima che diveníre pigro dire più volte
 that you would lose the good opinion every one had of you, unless you should be
pérdere buóno opiníone tutto avére a meno che éssere
 as diligent and careful as you were before.
diligénte premuróso éssere prima.

When I corrected you for your faults, it was not because I did not love you; on the contrary,
quando corréggere colpa éssere perchè amáre al contráριο
 it was to the end that you should employ your time well, and that you should be more diligent
éssere acciocchè impiegáre témpo éssere più diligénte
 than you are now.
adesso.

Though you began to learn Italian before me, I hope I shall speak it soon as well as you.
benchè principiáre imparáre Italiáno prima di me speráre parláre presto bene quanto voi.

[65]

I do not believe so, unless you have learned all the rules of the grammar.
crédere a meno che avére tutto régola grammática.

Though I did not learn them, yet I will take so much pains, that what I told you will prove true.
benchè imparáre pure pigliáre tanto pena dire éssere vero.

It will be some time before you have read them.
vi vorrà del témpo prima che léggere.

Would to God I had known you sooner, I should speak Italian well now: and although
volésse Iddío conóscere parláre Italiáno bene ora benchè
 I had learned when I was young, yet I knew but very little of it, when I began with you.
imparáre éssere giòvine sapére pochíssimo quando principiáre.

Perhaps it was not your master's fault; for before I composed my grammar, I found but few
forse éssere maéstro colpa prima che compórre grammática trováre poco
 that would learn grammatically.
imparáre grammaticalménte.

It is true I had a very good master, and if I had believed him, I should have learned by rules,
vero avére buóno maéstro se avére crédere avére imparáto per principj
 but I found them too tedious; and would to Heaven I had followed his advice, for
ma trováre troppo nojóso volésse Cielo avére seguito consíglío perchè
 I have a great desire to speak Italian.
avére gran voglia parláre Italiáno.

*Some Verbs signifying will, desire, leave, or fear, will have the Conjunction
 che after them, and the following Verb in the Subjunctive.*

I will leave you to do that.
lasciáre fare.

[66]

I wish you may be as honest as your father.
desideráre éssere onésto padre.

I ordered dinner to be ready immediately.

That must be done quickly.
bisógna fare presto.

God permitted it should happen.
Iddío perméttete succédere.

I am afraid you were mistaken.
avére paura ingannársi.

We express the two Anglicisms this day se'nnight, this day fortnight, by d'oggi a otto, d'oggi a quindici.

I believe I shall go into the country this day se'nnight, but I hope I shall come back this day fortnight.
crédere andáre campáña d'oggi a otto speráre ritornáre
d'oggi a quindici.

I am sure that when once you are there, you will not return so soon to town.
éssere sicúro quando una volta éssere tornáre così présto città.

I give you my word that this day fortnight I will come to see you.
dare paróla d'oggi a quindici veníre vedére.

When will your brother go to Germany?
quando fratéllo andáre Germánia?

He expects to go this day se'nnight, if it is fine weather.
contare andáre d'oggi a otto se fare bel tempo.

The word people, when taken generally for the people of a whole country, is expressed in Italian by the word gente.

[67]

The French had the name of being the most civil people in the world.
Francése avére riputazióne éssere civile gente mondo.

I should not like to live among the Spaniards, for they are very jealous people; but I should never be tired of living among the English, for I believe they are the most civil the most courteous, and the most obliging people in the world.
amáre vívere fra Spagnuólo perchè éssere gelóso gente
ma éssere mai stanco vívere fra Inglés perchè crédere éssere civile
cortése obbligánte gente mondo.

When the word people signifies subjects, it is expressed in Italian by the word pópolo.

A good prince should prefer the happiness of his people to his own. Happy are the people who have a good prince to govern them.
buóno príncipe preferíre felicità pópolo felice pópolo
avére buón governáre.

On the PARTICLE si, it is, they, one, &c. [See GRAM. p. 211.] The Particle si is always put before a Verb, and the Verb must be impersonal.

I was told that you speak Italian very well.
dire parláre Italiáno benissimo.

They do me more honour than I deserve; I wish it were true.
fare onóre meritáre volére vero.

They say you are going to be married.
dire stare per maritársi.

They say so, indeed; but they are much mistaken.
dire così in verità ma molto ingannársi.

I was assured that the lady's father and your's had concluded the articles of marriage.
assicuráre ^[1]signóra padre conchiúdere artícólo matrimónio.

If they say so, it is without any foundation.
se dire così senza alcúno fondaménto.

I am very glad to see you, for I was told you were gone to France.
rallegrársi vedére perchè dire Fráncia.

Pray who told you such a falsehood? No matter; and we were also told, you were to go to Italy.
dí grazia dire tale falsità non impórta éssere detto andáre Itália.

[1] The lady's father and your's, *vostro padre e quello della signora.*

The Verb to use in English, signifies in Italian servirsi, assuefársi, accostumársi; when it signifies servirsi, it is commonly followed by a Noun, but otherwise it is followed by a Verb.

He who forgets those things which he desires to remember, must use helps
dimenticare cosa desideráre ricordársi dovére servirsi ajúto
to cultivate his memory, or use the greatest diligence and attention when he is reading,
coltiváre memória o grande diligénza atenzióne quando léggere
that he may retain profitable instructions; for when they have once slipt out of the memory,
ritenére profittévole istruzíone perchè quando éssere una volta uscito memória
there is need of fresh reading to recall them.
bisognáre nuóva lettúra richiamáre.

All men desire riches, but all do not use riches rightly; when they are come to
tutto uómo desideráre ricchézze ma tutto non ne usano bene quando avére acquistato
honours and wealth, they are still greedy to heap up more. He who desires nothing,
onóre opulénza ancóra avido accumuláre desideráre niente
wants nothing: it is a wise man's part to restrain his desires.
avér bisógno sávio uómo dovére moderáre desidério.

The Impersonal Verb impórta, requires a Dative Case.

It much concerns young people to avoid bad company, as they would beware of the plague;
molto impórta gioventù schiváre cattívo compagnía come guardársi peste
it is more hurtful to the mind, than the most contagious disease to the body.
nuocévole spirito contagióso malattía corpo.

It concerns me, and all men to look to ourselves; the world is full of knaves and knavery.
impórta tutto badáre mondo piéno furbo furbéria
It is hard to be known, and he is hard to be found, who is fit to be trusted.
diffícile sapére trováre fidársi.

The greatest caution is to be used in the presence of children; masters must
grande cautéla adopráre presénza ragázzo maéstro dovére
behave themselves very warily, lest scholars learn evil of them; and it greatly concerns
comportársi prudentémente per timóre che scoláro imparáre del male molto impórta

boys to imitate their master's virtues.
gióvane imitáre maéstro virtù.

When the word to speak, is joined with truth, it is expressed in Italian by dire.

You promised me several times you would be diligent, and that you would never
prométtere spesse volta éssere diligénte mai
keep bad company; I perceive that you do not speak always the truth, for I met you to-day [70]
praticáre cattívo compagnia accorgérsi dire sempre verità incontráre oggi
with a man whose company I forbade you. A man who does not delight in
con uómo compagnia proibíre uno amáre
speaking always the truth, is unworthy of enjoying the society of honest people.
dire sempre verità indégno godére società onésto gente.

When in English a period begins by these words, I wish, I would, we express them thus in Italian, vorréi potér, with the following Verb in the Infinitive Mood.

I wish I could serve you, I would do it with all my heart.
potére servíre fare tutto cuóre.

I wish I could see your sister, I would give her something that was sent to me for her.
vedére sorélla dare qualche cosa éssere mandáto

I wish I could speak Italian as well as you do, it would be a great satisfaction to me.
parláre Italiáno éssere grande soddisfazióne

I wish I could do what you desire of me, I would not refuse it you.
fare desideráre ricusáre.

I wish I could be reconciled with your brother, for he is an honest man.
éssere riconciliáto fratéllo perchè galantuómo.

I wish I could go into the country with you, I would not return soon to town, for I would visit
andáre campáña ritornáre presto città andar a visitáre
all my friends who are there.
tutto amíco

I wish I could follow your example, I would live better than I do.
seguíre esémpio meglio.

Ought and must are to be rendered in Italian by the Present of the Indicative of the Verb dovere, and are not Impersonal.

[71]

At church people ought to sit still, and not to talk.
chiésa gente dovére stare quieto parláre.

At saying lessons, none ought to speak but he who is appointed by the master, whose leave
ripétere lezióne dovére parláre destináto maéstro perméssso
ought to be asked, before the scholars betake themselves to play.
dovére domandáre prima scoláre darsi giuóco.

The boy who is chastised on account of his slothfulness, has no cause to accuse his master
ragázzo castigáto a cagióne infingardággine avére motivo accusáre maéstro
of severity; he ought to blame himself, and resolve to shake off idleness for the future.
severità dovére biasimársi risólvere scuotersi dalla sua pigrizia all'avveníre.

The soldier must fight valiantly, that has a mind enflamed with a desire
soldáto dovére battérsi valorosaménte avére ánima accésso desidérió

to conquer the enemy; his arm must procure him the honour which his heart wishes for;
víncere nemíco braccio dovére procuráre onóre cuóre desideráre
but sometimes secret stratagems and subtle policy defeat the most valiant warriors.
ma qualche volta segréto stratagémma astúto política sconfiggere valoróso guerriéro.

Children must be obedient to their parents; those that grieve them, purchase to themselves
figlio dovére obbedíre genitóre affliggere attirarsi
a curse; they provoke God to deny them that length of life which he has promised
maledizióne Iddío rícusáre lunghézza vita avére promésso
to the dutiful.
obbediénte.

To be like, *when followed by a Noun, is to be rendered in Italian by rassomigliáre, and will have a Dative Case.*

[72]

Children are not always like their parents; they are sometimes quite different from them.
figliuólo rassomigliáre sempre genitori éssere qualche volta differénte

My brother is not like my father, who is of a mild disposition, and rich in the endowments
fratéllo rassomigliáre padre benigno índole ricco dote
that adorn the mind, though poor in estate.
ornáre ánimo benchè póvero stato.

Every man loves those who like him, and hates those who are hurtful to him: nature teaches us
ognúno amáre amáre odiáre nuocévole natúra insegnáre
to love our friends, but religion teaches us to love our enemies.
amáre amíco ma religióne insegnáre amáre nemíco.

To be so kind, *must be rendered in Italian by avére la bontà, and the following Verb is put in the Infinitive Mood, with the Preposition di.*

I intreat you to be so kind as to tell me how you call that in Italian.
supplicáre avére la bontà dire come chiamáre Italiáno.

If you will be so kind as to grant me that favour, there is nothing but I will do
se ella volére avér la bontà accordáre favóre niénte fare
to acknowledge it.
per mostrartene la mia riconoscenza.

If your brother will be so kind as to lend me a horse for two or three days, he would oblige me
fratéllo prestáre cavállo due tre giòrno obbligáre
infinitely.
infinítaménte.

I was this morning with your friend Mr. — and he was so kind as to offer me his purse.
éssere mattína con amíco avére esibíre borsa.

[73]

I hope you will be so kind as to recommend me to your friends.
speráre avére raccomandáre amíco.

Be so kind as to tell me when your sister will return from the country, for I make no doubt but
avére dire quando sorélla ritornáre campáña dubitáre
she will bring me news from my uncle.
portáre nuóva zio.

The English phrase, there is nothing but, ought to be rendered in Italian by non v'è niénte che non, and it requires the following Verb to be in the Subjunctive Mood.

There is nothing but I would do to deserve the honour of your friendship.
non v'è niénte fare meritáre onóre amicizia.

There is nothing but what I would undertake to oblige my friends.
non v'è niénte che non intrapréndere obbligáre amíco.

There is nothing but what I would suffer willingly, if I were so unfortunate as
non v'è niénte soffríre volentiéri éssere sfortunáto
to have disobliged you.
avére dispiacére.

There is nothing but what an honest man ought to do, to deserve every body's esteem.
non v'è niénte galantuomo dovére meritáre tutto stima.

There is nothing but what a good prince ought to do, to make his subjects happy.
niénte buóno príncipe dovére fare réndere suddito felice.

*This phrase, to be as good as one's word, must be rendered in Italian by
mantenére la sua paróla.*

You often promised me to do me service, but I will never believe you;
spesso prométtere réndere servizio ma mai crédere
it is a very dishonest thing not to be as good as one's word; for nobody will credit you
éssere disonésto mantenere la sua paróla perchè nissúno prestare fede
afterwards.
dopo.

[74]

You have often promised me to amend your manners, but you are seldom as good as your word.
avére sovente prométtere ammendáre costúme ma raramente mantenére la sua paróla
I confess that I have not been as good as my word, but I promise that, for the future,
confessáre avére mantenúto la mia paróla ma prométtere all'avveníre
I will behave better than I have hitherto done.
comportársi méglío fare fin adéssó.

So much as, ought to be rendered in Italian by tanto, or quanto.

Your brother seems to have had a better education than you, though I am sure your father
fratéllo parére avére educazióne benchè sicúro padre
did not spend so much money upon him as he did upon you.
spéndere tanto

If we would love God as much as He loves us, we should not offend him so often.
amáre Iddío quanto amáre offéndere cosi spesso.

If we would love our neighbour as much as we love ourselves, there would not be so much
amáre prossímo quanto éssere tanto
enmity in the world.
nemicizia mondo.

As long as, must be rendered in Italian by finchè, or mentre che.

As *or* so long as you are not obedient to your parents, God will not bless you.
mentre che éssere obbediénte genitori Iddío benedíre.

As long as you are idle, you will never learn any thing, and you will be ignorant while you live.
finchè éssere pigro mai imparáre niénte éssere ignoránte finchè vívere.

[75]

As long as you are rich, you will not want friends.
éssere ricco mancáre amíco.

As long as it is in your power to oblige your friends, do not refuse to do them service.
essere potère obbligare amico ricasare réndere servizio.

I had rather, *is expressed in Italian by* ameréi méglío, *or* ameréi piuttósto.

I had rather lose some small thing, than go to law with a litigious man.
amare meglio perdere piccòlo cosa andare legge litigióso uómo.

I had rather die than disoblige you.
amare piuttósto morire dispiacére.

I had rather live all my life-time with you, than stay one day with your brother.
amare méglío vivere vita tempo stare giòrno fratéllo.

I had rather endure a slight injury from a friend, than to fight with him, though I would sooner die than pass for a coward.
morire soffrire piccòla ingiúria amico battérsi benchè passare codardo.

When we inquire for some person's name, we make use of the Verb chiamársi.

Pray, friend, what is your name?
di grazia amico come chiamársi?

My name is John Baptist.
Giambattísta.

What is your brother's name?
come fratéllo?

His name is George Frederic Augustus.
Giórgio Fedérico Augústo.

What was the late king of France's name?
come defúnto re Fráncia?

He was called Lewis the Sixteenth.
chiamársi Luígi décimo sesto.

What was the queen of France's name?
come regína Fráncia?

Her name was Mary Antoinette.
chiamársi Maria Antónina.

What was the late regent's name?
come defúnto reggénte?

He was called the duke of Orleans.
chiamársi duca Orleans.

To entertain, *must be rendered by* trattáre.

If you will come with me into the country, I will entertain you very well.
venire campáña trattáre beníssimo.

You see I do not entertain you like a stranger, but I treat you like a friend.
vedére trattáre da forestiére ma trattáre da amíco.

I am sure, if we were lords, you could not entertain us better.
éssere sicúro gran signóre trattáre méglío.

Dipénde da voi, *signifies in English, it lies in your power, it has all its tenses; and is Impersonal.*

It lies in your power to be a good scholar, for you have as much wit as any of your school-fellows.
depéndere éssere sapiénte perchè avére tanto spírito che qualúnque condiscépolo.

It is in our power to be for ever happy.
dipéndere éssere sempre félice.

It is in his power to do me that service.
dipéndere réndere servízio.

It is in your power to go abroad; for your father told me several times he would be very glad to see you go on your travels. [77]
dipéndere andár a viaggiáre padre dire molte volte avére caro andáre a viaggiáre.

It lies in their power to recommend me to their friends.
dipéndere da raccomandáre amíco.

Andáre ad incóntrar uno, *signifies to go and meet somebody.*

Sir, I come to beg a favour of you, which I hope you will not refuse me. I heard your uncle will come to-morrow to town; you will oblige me infinitely, if you will lend me your horse to go and meet him, and I assure you that I will take great care of it.
Signóre veníre domandáre favóre speráre rícusáre intendere zio veníre dománi città obbligáre moltissimo prestáre cavállo andáre ad incóntrar assicuráre avére grande cura

Sir, I am very sorry I cannot oblige you, for I must go myself to meet my wife, who is coming from the country; but any other time it will be at your service.
rincrescere non potere servíre perchè bisógna andáre ad incóntrar moglie veníre campágná ma altro volta éssere servízio.

We often make use of the Impersonal Verb rincrescere, when we speak of the misfortunes of others, which signifies in English, to be sorry, to be concerned; and then the following word must be in the Genitive Case.

I am sorry for the misfortune that has befallen you.
rincrescere disgrázia accadére

We ought to be concerned at our friend's misfortunes.
dovére rincrescere amíco sciagúre.

I was very much concerned at your loss.
moltíssimo rincrescere pérdita.

Mi pare mill' anni is an Italian expression which signifies to long; we make

use of it only in the present of the Indicative, and the following verb must be in the Infinitive with the Preposition di.

I long to see your father to tell him how much you deserve to be praised for your diligence.
vedére padre dire quanto meritáre éssere lodáto diligenza.

I long to go into the country, to settle a dispute that arose amongst my farmers.
andáre campagna aggiustáre dispúta nascere fra fattóre.

I long to pay what I owe you, for I do not love to be in any body's debt.
pagáre dovére perchè amáre dovére a nessuno.

I long to know the Italian language perfectly well.
sapére Italiáno lingua perfettaménte bene.

We often make use of avér gran voglia, for to long, and it requires the following Verb to be in the Infinitive mood.

I long to go and see Mr. George, to ask him for the money he owes me, but I will put it off till next week, that you may go with me.
*andáre vedére Giórgio domandáre danáro dovére ma differíre
fino próssimo settimána potére venire.*

I long to go to Italy, for I do not love to live in England.
andáre Italia piacére vívere Inghiltéra.

I long to tell you something, though I do not know how to tell it you, for fear of disobligng you.
dire qualche cosa benchè sapére dire per paúra dispiacere.

I long to learn Italian, and for all that I do not know what hinders me from beginning.
imparáre Italiáno con tutto ciò sapére impedíre principiáre.

Degnársi is often used for to be so kind as, and requires the following verb in the Infinitive Mood.

[79]

Be so kind as to hear me a moment, and you will see that what they told you of me is a false report.
*degnáre sentíre moménto vedére dire
éssere falso rappórto.*

Be so kind as to grant me that favour, and I will not trouble you any more.
degnáre accordáre favóre incomodáre

Posso appéna, I can hardly, requires the following verb to be in the Infinitive Mood.

I can hardly believe what you tell me of Mr. Gregory, for I always took him for a very sober honest man.
*posso appéna crédere dire signóre Gregório perchè sempre crédere
sobrio onésto uómo.*

I could hardly believe my eyes when I saw you, for I thought you were in America.
potere appéna crédere ócchio quando vedére perchè pensáre éssere América.

I have got such a cold, and my head is so heavy, that I can hardly read a word.
éssere talmente infreddáto testa pesánte potere appéna leggere paróla.

Scarce, or hardly *must likewise be expressed by* appéna.

Scarce were you gone out last night, when your friend, sir William Henry, came to see me,
appéna essere uscito jéri sera che amico cavaliére Guglielmo Enrico veníre vedere
and was very sorry you did not stay a little longer.
dispiacere restáre poco più.

There are men in the world who are so much used to do mischief, that they are hardly
essere uómo mondo essere tanto avvézzo fare male essere appéna
out of trouble, but they immediately fall into another.
uscíto impáccio che súbito cadére altro.

[80]

Scarce have you done a good action, but you seem to repent it; for were it not so,
appéna avére fatto buóno azióne parére pentírsi perchè essere così
you would not so soon again fall into your former ill courses.
così presto ricadére primiéra cattiva vita.

To have much ado, *must be rendered in Italian by* stentáre, *and requires the following verb in the Infinitive with the Preposition a.*

I had much ado yesterday to persuade your brother to stay with me; he would go and sup with
stentáre jéri persuadére fratéllo restáre andáre cenáre
Mr. Horace, who came to town last night.
Signór Orázio veníre città jeri sera.

I had much ado to make peace with your mother, she was fully resolved not to forgive you,
stentáre fare pace madre essere affátto risolúto perdonáre
therefore take care for the future not to offend her any more.
percíò badáre all'avveníre offéndere

I had much ado to engage your uncle to pass his word for a hundred pounds
stentáre impegnáre zio passáre paróla cento lira
I owe Mr. Clement.
dovére Cleménte.

To be quiet *must be rendered in Italian by*, star fermo, saldo, or chetársi.

You will not be quiet till you have done some mischief.
stare fermo finchè avér fatto male.

[81]

Be quiet, or else I will make you repent it.
chetársi altriménte fare pentíre.

You would not be quiet when I bid you, you see now what you suffer for it.
stare saldo quando ordinare vedere adéssso soffríre

Abbassár gli occhj, *signifies* to look down.

When you speak to a person of great quality, you ought not to stare at him, but you ought
quando parláre persóna alto qualità dovere fissáre ma dovére
sometimes to look down to show him the respect you have for him.
qualche volta abbassare gli occhj mostráre rispétto avére

Upon INTERROGATIONS.

[See GRAM. p. 70.]

From whence had America its name? From Amerigo Vesputio, a Florentine, in 1497;
avére América nome Amerigo Vespúzio Fiorentino

though Columbus was the first discoverer of it in 1492.

^[1]*benchè Colómba essere primo scopritóre*

How large is that country? How is that empire divided? What are the productions of it?
grande paése impéro diviso prodótto

What is there worthy of notice in that country? Are there any European colonies
degnó notízia paése Européa colónia

in that part of the world?
parte mondo?

Who subdued the greatest part of the world in twelve years time? Alexander,
soggiogáre grande parte mondo dódici anno Alessádro

king of Macedonia.

Re Macedónia.

To whom do the Canary Islands belong, how many are there of them, and how do they lie?

Canárie Ísola appartenére quante ^[2]essere essere situáto?

[82]

[1] See *Gram.* p. 205, upon the conjunction *though*.

[2] See *Gram.* p. 147, upon the conjugation of the verb impersonal *there is*.

Upon the Irregular Construction of Personal and Possessive PRONOUNS.

[See GRAM. p. 61, and 66.]

Most men worship love, to it they sacrifice their finest days, and from it they expect
la maggior parte uómo adoráre amóre sacrificáre bello giòrno aspettáre
their greatest happiness.
grande felicità.

Glory makes the whole ambition of heroes; they thirst after nothing, they seek nothing else;
glória fare tutto ambizióne eróe respirare altro cercáre altro
they apply to it alone, it is to it alone they make vows.
indirizzársi solo solo fare voto.

Self-love is our primum mobile; it is that which rules our passions, and to it are men indebted
amáre próprio primo móbile regoláre passióne essere uómo debitóre
for most of the services which they reciprocally render one another.
maggior parte servizio reciprocáménte réndere

Is that the tree you were speaking of? Yes, that is it.
essere albéro parláre

It looks very fine, but its fruit is good for nothing.
parére bello ma frutto non vale niente.

This, on the contrary, has no appearance; it is a peach-tree, and the peaches are delicious.
contrário avére apparénza pérsico péscá essere delizióso.

When general G. saw himself pursued so close, he, reaching the river, threw himself in it
quando generále G. vedére seguitáto così da vicíno arriváre fiúme gettársi
(on horseback), with a design to cross it over, rapid as it was; when he came to the stream,
a caválio intenzióne tráversáre ^[1]rápido essere quando veníre corrénte
for all he did to resist it, he could not get the better of it; he then resolved to go down with it,
tutto fare resístere potére superare allóra risólvere seguíre
and let himself be carried away; but his horse was too tired to be able to swim long;
lasciarsi portáre via ma caválio essere troppo stanco potére nuotáre molto
and as he endeavoured to quit the stream, the animal, which had now lost all its strength,

[83]

sunk under him; he expected it, therefore resigned himself to his fate; he still swam
come sforzarsi *lasciare corrénte* *bestia* *avére* *perdere tutto forza*
sommergèrsi *aspettarsi* *perciò* *rassegnarsi* *destino* *ancóra nuotàre*
 (for a while) with the stream, but not being able to get out of it, he was drowned.
(per un pezzo) *corrénte* *ma potére* *sortire* *éssere annegato.*

The water which you have recommended him to drink is not fit for him; I know all its qualities,
acqua *avére raccomandáto* *bere* *essere próprio* *conóscere tutto qualità*
 and will never recommend it in such a case. Of these two rivers, one has its spring in the Alps,
mai raccomandáre *tale caso* *questo due fiume* *avére sorgénte*
 and the other in the Pyrenees.
altro *Pirenéi.*

I have bought a new sword, the hilt of it is silver, but I do not like its shell;
avére compráre *nuóvo spada* *guárdia* *éssere d'argénto* *ma amáre* *cóccia*
 I will not part with the old one; it has done me much service; I have twice owed my life to it;
disfarsi della *vécchio* *avére reso molto servizio* *avére due volta* *dovuto vita*
 only I will get it cleaned, and get a new hilt to it, and it will still be of service to me by night. [84]
solo *fare ripulire* *méttere nuóvo guárdia* *ancóra* *servíre* *nottetempo.*

Keep from the wall, do not lean upon it.
allontanarsi *muro* *appoggiarsi*

If you sit in that arm-chair take care you do not hurt yourself, for the back and elbows
sedére *sédia d'appoggio* *badáre* *farsi male* *perchè* *spalliera bracciúolo*
 are broken.
éssere rotto.

His house is fine, I like its situation, but the rooms are not well contrived:
casa bello *amáre situazióne* *ma stánza* *éssere bene regoláto*
 he has spent a great deal of money upon it; he has altered the roof, and made
avére fáto gran spesa *avére fatto cambiar tetto* *fatto*
 a stately stair-case; it costs him much, but (upon the whole) he owes his health to it;
supérbo scala *costáre molto* *ma per altro* *dovere salúte*
 he lives there the whole year. The gardens are very fine; he has added groves
vívère *tutto anno* *giardíno* *éssere bello* *aver aggiúnto* *boschéto*
 and water spouts to them; there are fine meadows all around: he designs to make
getto d'acqua *éssere bello prato* *all'intorno* *contáre fare*
 still greater alterations.
maggióre cambiáménto.

[1] See *Gram.* p. 205, upon the conjunction *though*.

On the verb to play, with the Particles at, and on.

Do you never play at cards? I play sometimes at piquet, and at quadrille,
mai giocáre *carta* *qualche volta* *picchetto* *quartíglío*
 to oblige the company.
obbligáre compagnía.

Let us play for a crown. I never play so high; I do not like to play for so much money:
giuocáre *scudo* *fare mai grosso giuóco* *non piacére* *tanto danáro*
 I do not love to play at games of chance, as at dice, or even at cards; but I like to play
amáre *giuóco di sorte* *come dado* *anche carta* *piacére*
 sometimes at bowls, at billiards, at tennis, or nine pins. We play at chess every night,
qualche volta *bocce* *bigliárdo* *pallacórda* *birillo* *scácchi* *ogni sera*
 my cousin and I. Can you play on any instrument?
cugíno *sapére suonáre* *qualche struménto?*

I can play a little on the flute. I thought you could also play on the fiddle. No: but I know
potére suonáre poco *flauto* *crédere* *anche suonáre* *violíno* *ma sapere*
 that you play very well on the bass-viol: if you please to come to our house,
suonáre *viola d'amore* *piacére* *veníre da noi*
 we will make a little concert: my sister will play on the piano-forte, you on your bass,

[84]

[85]

We use the Verb *avére*, instead of *éssere*, in speaking of being hungry, dry, cold, hot, or old.

You eat as if you were not hungry. Excuse me, I eat well enough, but I am not very hungry;
mangiáre avére fame scusáre assai bene avére grande fame

I am more dry than hungry. I have been thirsty all day.
avére sete fame avere avúto sete tutto giòrno.

I am very cold, and very hungry. Are you cold? On the contrary I am very warm, but I am tired.
avére freddo fame avére freddo al contráριο avére gran caldo ma stanco.

My hands are so cold that I cannot write.
mano avére freddo potére scrivére.

[1] I believe your head is always cold, for you seldom pull off your hat.
crédere testa sempre freddo perchè raraménte leváre cappélllo.

How old is your sister? She is not fifteen yet. I thought she was twenty; and you, sir,
quanto anno avere sorélla avére quíndici anno crédere avére venti anno ed ella
how old are you?
avére?

[86]

I was very cold this morning when I came: but I am very warm now. You do not look so.
avére freddo mattina quando veníre ma caldo adéssso parére

You eat as if you were not hungry. I am more cold than hungry. I have been thirsty all the day.
mangiáre avére fame freddo fame ho avuto sete giòrno.

[1] I believe, &c. *Credo che voi abbiate sempre freddo alla testa.*

The Impersonal Verb *must*, is sometimes rendered by *dovere*, and sometimes by *bisognáre*.

To make war plenty of money must be had.
fare guerra molto danáro bisógna avére.

Men must love virtue to be happy. One must be mad to think that men can be happy without
si dovére amáre virtù felíce bisognáre pazzo crédere uómo potére senza^[1]
loving virtue.
amáre virtù.

Men should learn first the duties belonging to human nature.
dovére imparáre prima dovére appartenénte umáno natúra.

A woman must have a good deal of circumspection not to speak of herself. One must not hope
donna bisógna avére circospezióne parláre bisognáre speráre
to see men cured of the ill-habit they have of speaking always of themselves, their adventures,
uómo guarírsi cattivo abitúdiine avére parláre sempre avventúra
and wealth; for nothing is more tiresome. One should impose upon one's-self a law
opulénza niénte nojoso dovére farsi legge
never to speak of one's-self neither one way, nor another.
mái parláre [2]

We must not easily believe those who flatter us: neither must we reject entirely
dovére facilménte crédere adulare rigettáre
the compliments that are paid to us, when we think we deserve them; that mistaken modesty
compliménto fare quando crédere meritáre malintesa modéstia

[87]

is hardly less displeasing, than a foolish vanity. Much art and nicety are requisite
poco meno spiacevole sciocco vanità arte delicatézza necessário
to season praises well: but there is also a way of receiving them, when they are merited,
condire lode ma anche modo ricevere quando meritare
that does not displease modesty. Praises are like a sort of tribute paid to true merit: we must
offendere modéstia lode come spécie tribúto réndere vero mérito dovére
neither reject them through affectation, nor hanker after them too eagerly.
nè rigettáre per affettazióne nè ambíre con troppa premúra.

[1] Senza governs the infinitive mood.

[2] Neither one way, nor another, i. e. *nè in bene, nè in male.*

On the negative Particles and Adverbs.

No one knows the sufferings of lovers, unless he himself has loved.
nissúno sapére sofferénza amánte se non

I have always loved her very much.
sempre amáto molto.

To court with respect and attention, is the best means of being loved again. I have found
far la corte rispétto attenzióne mezzo riamáto avére trovare
nobody of your opinion.
nessúno opinione.

I by no means believe what he says; nor I neither.
in nessun modo credere dire nemméno io.

She always comes unseasonably, as well as her sister.
sempre veníre fuór di tempo come anche sorélla.

He has not yet received an answer.
avére ancóra ricevúto rispósta.

Is there any thing more wonderful, than the virtue of the loadstone?
niente ammirábile virtù calamíta?

Did he ever mention it?
mai mentováre?

We have done nothing that ought to make you angry.
avére fatto niénte dovére andar in colera.

I am going there, lest he should come.
andáre per timor veníre.

I tell you, that, if henceforth I perceive that you attempt to play any trick to hinder me
dire se da qui innánzi accorgérsi tentáre fare tiro a impedíre
from marrying my son, I will complain to the magistrate, and get you punished
marítare figlio lagnarsi magistrato fare punire
severely.—I promise you I will never do it.
severamente prométtere mai fare.

She is indifferent to me; and I neither love, nor hate her.
indifferénte amáre odiáre.

Now that they are under my care, they behave very prudently.
ora éssere sotto cura comportársi prudentémente.

She has neither relations, nor friends.
avére nè parénte nè amico.

I will never forgive you, unless you promise to see her: she is so ill that she can take nothing,
mai perdonáre se non prométtere vedere stare male potére pigliáre
neither can she have any rest.
nè potére avére ripóso.

I will not take any physic before the winter is quite out.
pigliáre medicina prima invérno affátto passáto.

Why does he not boldly tell her his reasons?
perchè liberaménte dire ragióne?

He knows not where to meet her now.
sapére dove incontráre adéssó.

I ask nothing but what is just; I cannot pay others, if I am not paid what is due to me.
domandáre che giústó non potére pagáre altro pagáre éssere dovúto.

On the CONJUNCTIONS.

[89]

Although I have no money, I cannot resolve to borrow any of my friends. Obey,
benchè avére danáro non potére risólvete prenderne ad imprestito da amico obbedire
or else you shall be whipped.
altrimente ^[1]staffiláte.

When I punish you for your faults, you think I hate you; whereas it is only because I love you,
quando punire fallo crédere odiáre in vece che perchè amáre
I take that trouble.
préndere incómodo.

Your brother came to see me yesterday as soon as you were gone. If he come again,
fratello veníre vedére jéri súbito che partíre ritornáre
be so good as to tell him that I have waited for him till now.
avére bontà dire avére aspettáto fin'ora.

Though I used my utmost endeavours, and neglected nothing to please him, yet
benchè fare tutto i miei sforzi trascuráre niénte piacere nientediméno
he was constantly scolding me.
continueménte sgridáre.

That Adriana, whether she is Pamphilus's wife, or whether she is but his mistress, she is
Adriána che Pamfílo moglie o che amorósa
always with him.
sempre con lui.

Either through reason, or caprice, she has married him.
sia per ragióne capríccio sposáre.

Wars are not so bloody since the invention of gunpowder.
guerra sanguinóso dopo invenzióne pólvete da schioppo.

Unless a book be instructive or entertaining, I do not wish to read it.
a meno che libro istruttívo piacévole

Whether she is writing, or reading, she will have her parrot with her.
che scrívere léggere volére avére pappágallo

[90]

Since you have forbidden him, he does it no more.
dacchè avére proibíto

If he should call at my house, while I am out, my people would tell him where I am.
passáre da me mentre éssere fuóri gente dire dove

Whether he wins, or loses, he is always the same.
sia guadagnáre pèrdere sempre l'istesso.

I will not go there, unless you go along with me.
andáre a meno meco.

You must not play before you can say your lesson.
dovére giuocáre prima sapére lezióne.

Why do you not learn it then, instead of losing your time? He is so far from being forward,
perchè imparáre dunque in vece pèrdere tempo in vece éssere avanzáto
that he knows nothing at all. Far from following my advice, he does not mind what I say
sapére niénte affátto lungi seguíre consíglío badáre dire
to him.

I will rather consent to lose all, than give up my right.
piuttósto consentíre pèrdere rinunziáre.

Though you were a king, I would not marry you.
se éssere Re sposáre.

Would to God I still were under his tuition, and my father had never removed me
volére éssere sotto condótta padre avére mai ritiráto
from his school.
scuóla.

It avails nothing to a girl to be young, without being handsome, nor to be handsome
servíre niénte ragazza giòvine senza bello nè éssere
without being wise.
senza saggío.

After you have done your exercise, you must read it over two or three times,
dopo fare tema dovére ripassare due tre volta
to correct the faults you may have made in it.
corréggere errore potére fare.

Remember what I told you several times, that you will never be able to speak, or write Italian,
ricordársi dire parrécchie volte mai potére parláre scrívere Italiáno
unless you are master of the rules.
a meno possédere régola.

I will take so much pains that I hope I shall speak it before it is long; though I am convinced
darsi tanto pena speráre fra poco benchè convínto
it is very difficult to learn the Italian tongue perfectly well.
difficile imparáre Italiáno lingua perfettaménte.

You will not find it so hard, if you learn the rules well.
trováre difficile régola bene.

The narrowness of the mind, ignorance and presumption produce stubbornness; because
picolezza ánimo ignoránza presunzióne ostinazióne perchè
obstinate people will believe nothing but what they understand, and they understand

but ^{ostinato}very few things. ^{credere}
ben poco cosa.

che quel comprendere

[1] Render, *avréte le staffiláte.*

On most PREPOSITIONS.

I rather choose to live in the country than in town, especially at Florence: therefore
amáre meglio vivere campáña città sopra tutto Firénze perciò

I intend to set out to-morrow for my country-house, and then I will send my eldest son to Sicily
fare conto partire dománi casa di campagna e poi mandáre maggiore figlio Sicilia
for the summer.
state.

Where will you go to-night? To the play.
dove andáre staséra commédia.

[92]

When shall I dance, sir? You shall dance in your turn, and not before.
quando balláre quando vi toccáre prima.

Where do you live, sir? I live in St. James's street, near a fruiterer's, opposite a taylor's.
star di casa San Giácomo strada vicino fruttajuólo dirimpétto sartóre

The best way to go to my house, is to pass through the Park, since you live in Westminster.
via venir da me passáre attráverso Parco giacchè stare in Westminster

I intend to travel first all over England, and France, and then to Germany, and Italy;
far conto viaggiáre tutto Inghilterra Fránzia poi Germánia Itália
from Italy to Spain, where I shall embark to return to England.
Spagna dove imbarcársi ritornáre Inghilterra.

I shall go to Scotland in six months, or thereabouts.
andáre Scózia fra sei mesi incírca.

I will call upon your partners within twelve days; and I will wait upon them as far as their seat,
passáre socio fra dódici giòrno accompagnáre infino villa
which is magnificent; were you ever there? Yes. The walls are inlaid with marble;
manífico éssere mai sí paréte lamináre marmo
the stair-case is painted in oil; all the furniture is worked with the needle; in short,
scala dipínto a ólio tutto tapezzeria fatto ad ago in somma
nothing richer can be seen.
ricco potére vedére.

I should be very glad to spend a few days at that wonderful seat. How far is it?
avére ben caro passáre alcuno giòrno maraviglióso villa lontáno?

[93]

It is a great way: it is about a hundred and twenty miles off.
molto lontáno di qui incírca miglio.

The most uneasy situation is between fear and hope. Heroes formerly sacrificed themselves
spiacevole situazióne lo stare fra timóre speránza eróe anticaménte sacrificársi
for their country and their mistress; now-a-days nothing is done but for fortune and pleasure.
patria bella oggidì niénte farsi fortuna piacére.

A woman can please without beauty, but she can hardly do it without sense and amiability.
donna potére piacére senza bellezza difficilmente sénso amabilità.

There is no less eloquence in the tone of the voice, the eyes, and the countenance, than in
meno eloquenza tuóno voce óchio aspétto
the choice of words.
scelta paróla.

Europe, in relation to the other parts of the world, lies northward; it is bounded
Európa rispetto altro parte mondo éssere situáto settentríone confináto
 on the east by Asia, and the Black Sea, which communicates with the Mediterranean
oriente Ásia Nero Mare comunicáre Mediterranéó
 by the Straits of Constantinople; on the south by Africa, from which it is separated by
Stretto Costantinópoli mezzogiórno Áffrica quale separáre
 the Mediterranean Sea; on the west by the Atlantic ocean; and on the north by the Frozen Sea:
mare occidénte Atlántico oceáno settentríone Mar Glaciále
 its extent taken from Cape St. Vincent to the frontiers of Asia, is about
estensione prendere Capo San Vincénzio frontiera Ásia incirca
 3,600 English miles: and from Cape North to Greece is about 2,200 miles.
Inglése miglio Capo Norte Grécia

[94]

France has Spain towards the south, from which it is divided by the Pyrenean mountains,
Francia Spagna verso mezzogiórno diviso Pirenéo
 which are of a surprising height, and extend from the ocean to the Mediterranean; a tract of
stupéndo altézza stendérsi oceano Mediterraneo tratto
 about 220 miles.
incirca miglia.

Lately Published,

A KEY TO BOTTARELLI'S EXERCISES, with a few Extracts in Prose and Verse, with English Translations, for the use of Beginners, by P. R. ROTA; a new edition, revised and corrected. 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

THE COMPLETE ITALIAN MASTER; containing the best and easiest Rules for attaining that Language, by SIGNOR VENERONI; with a short Introduction to Italian Versification—Extracts from the Italian Poets; and the Italian words properly accented to facilitate the Pronunciation to Learners. A new edition, carefully corrected, and very considerably improved, 12mo. 6s. bound.

THE NEW ITALIAN, ENGLISH, and FRENCH POCKET DICTIONARY, carefully compiled from the Dictionaries of LA CRUSCA, Dr. S. JOHNSON, the FRENCH ACADEMY, and others of the best authority; having the Parts of Speech properly distinguished, and each Word accented according to its true Pronunciation. A new Edition, very greatly augmented, and much improved, by a union of the respective Works of F. BOTTARELLI and G. POLIDORI, in three volumes, square duodecimo, price 1l. 1s. boards.

N. B. *As this work is much used, as well by Travellers, as Students, a short abstract of the relative value of Italian, French and English Money has been prefixed.*

AN ABRIDGEMENT OF THE ROMAN HISTORY.

[95]

CHAP. I.

Of the ORIGIN of the ROMANS.

(Year of the World, 2800—Before Christ, 1184.)

All [1]nations [2]seem [3]willing to [4]derive [5]merit from the [6]splendor of their [7]origin, and [8]where [9]history [10]is silent, they [11]generally [12]supply the [13]defect with [14]fable. The [15]Romans were [16]particularly [17]desirous of being [18]thought [19]descended from the [20]Gods, [21]as if they would [22]hide the [23]meanness of their [24]real [25]ancestry. [26]Æneas, the [27]son of [28]Venus and [29]Anchises, having [30]escaped from the [31]destruction of [32]Troy, [33]after [34]many [35]adventures and [36]dangers [37]arrived in [38]Italy, [39]where he was [40]kindly [41]received by [42]Latinus, [43]king of the [44]Latins, who [45]gave him his [46]daughter [47]Lavinia in [48]marriage. Italy was [49]then [50]as it is [51]now, [52]divided into a [53]number of [54]small [55]states, [56]independent of [57]each other, and, [58]consequently, [59]subject to [60]frequent [61]contentions [62]among themselves. [63]Turnus, [64]king of the [65]Rutuli, was the [66]first who [67]opposed Æneas,

[96]

he having [68]long [69]made pretensions to Lavinia himself. A [70]war [71]ensued, in which the [72]Trojan [73]hero was [74]victorious, and [75]Turnus [76]slain. In [77]consequence of this, Æneas [78]built a [79]city, which was [80]called [81]Lavinium, in [82]honour of his [83]wife; and [84]some time after [85]engaging in another [86]war [87]against [88]Mezentius, one of the [89]petty kings of the [90]country, he was [91]conquered in his [92]turn, and [93]died in [94]battle, after a [95]reign of four [96]years.

[97]Ascanius, his [98]son, [99]succeeded to the [100]kingdom, and to him, Silvius, a [101]second son, [102]whom he had by Lavinia. It would be [103]tedious to [104]recite a [105]dry [106]catalogue of the kings that [107]followed, and of whom we [108]know [109]little more than their [110]names; it will be [111]sufficient to [112]say, that the [113]succession [114]continued for [115]near [116]four [117]hundred [118]years in the [119]family, and that [120]Numitor was the [121]last king of Alba.

[97]

FOOTNOTES

- [1] *nazióne*
- [2] *parére*
- [3] *desideróso*
- [4] *trarre*
- [5] *mérito*
- [6] *splendóre*
- [7] *origine*
- [8] *dove*
- [9] *istória*
- [10] *tacére*
- [11] *generalménte*
- [12] *sovveníre al*
- [13] *difétto*
- [14] *favóla*
- [15] *Románo*
- [16] *particolarménte*
- [17] *ambíre*
- [18] *credúto*
- [19] *discéso*
- [20] *dio pl. dei*
- [21] *come se*
- [22] *nascóndere*
- [23] *bassézza*
- [24] *vero*
- [25] *antenáti*
- [26] *Enéa*
- [27] *figlio*
- [28] *Vénere*
- [29] *Anchíse*
- [30] *scampáre*
- [31] *distruzióne*
- [32] *Troja*
- [33] *dopo*
- [34] *molto*
- [35] *avventúra*
- [36] *perícólo*
- [37] *arriváre*
- [38] *Itália*

- [39] *dove*
- [40] *cortese mente*
- [41] *ricevuto*
- [42] *Latino*
- [43] *re*
- [44] *Latino*
- [45] *dare*
- [46] *figliuola*
- [47] *Lavinia*
- [48] *matrimonio*
- [49] *allora*
- [50] *come*
- [51] *ora*
- [52] *diviso*
- [53] *numero*
- [54] *piccolo*
- [55] *stato*
- [56] *indendente*
- [57] *l'uno dall'altro*
- [58] *conseguentemente*
- [59] *soggetto*
- [60] *frequente*
- [61] *contesa*
- [62] *fra*
- [63] *Turno*
- [64] *re*
- [65] *Rutuli*
- [66] *primo*
- [67] *opporsi*
- [68] *molto tempo*
- [69] *essendo che pretendeva egli pure a*
- [70] *guerra*
- [71] *nascere*
- [72] *Trojano*
- [73] *eroe*
- [74] *vittorioso*
- [75] *Turno*
- [76] *ucciso*
- [77] *conseguenza*
- [78] *edificare*
- [79] *città*
- [80] *chiamato*
- [81] *Lavinio*
- [82] *onore*
- [83] *moglie*
- [84] *qualche tempo dopo*
- [85] *attaccare*
- [86] *guerra*
- [87] *contro*
- [88] *Mesenzio*

[89]	<i>régolo</i>
[90]	<i>paése</i>
[91]	<i>vinto</i>
[92]	<i>volta</i>
[93]	<i>moríre</i>
[94]	<i>battáglia</i>
[95]	<i>regno</i>
[96]	<i>anno</i>
[97]	<i>Ascanio</i>
[98]	<i>figlio</i>
[99]	<i>succédere</i>
[100]	<i>regno</i>
[101]	<i>secondo genito</i>
[102]	<i>nátogli da</i>
[103]	<i>nojóso</i>
[104]	<i>recitáre</i>
[105]	<i>insípido</i>
[106]	<i>catálogo</i>
[107]	<i>seguíre</i>
[108]	<i>sapére</i>
[109]	<i>poco</i>
[110]	<i>nome</i>
[111]	<i>bastáre</i>
[112]	<i>dire</i>
[113]	<i>successióne</i>
[114]	<i>continuáre</i>
[115]	<i>vicíno</i>
[116]	<i>quattro</i>
[117]	<i>cento</i>
[118]	<i>anno</i>
[119]	<i>famíglia</i>
[120]	<i>Numitóre</i>
[121]	<i>último</i>

CHAP. II.

(Of the World, 3301—Before Christ, 753.)

The ^[1]twelfth ^[2]king of the ^[3]Latins after ^[4]Æneas, was ^[5]Amulius, who ^[6]circumvented his ^[7]brother ^[8]Numitor, to whom the ^[9]right of ^[10]succession ^[11]appertained, upon the ^[12]account of his ^[13]age. Numitor had an ^[14]only ^[15]daughter ^[16]called Sylvia, and ^[17]Romulus and ^[18]Remus, ^[19]twin brothers, and founders of Rome, were, as it is said in fable and history, the ^[20]sons of ^[21]Mars and Sylvia. The children being ^[22]exposed by the ^[23]king's ^[24]order, were ^[25]privately ^[26]educated by one ^[27]Faustulus, a ^[28]shepherd. When they were ^[29]grown up, they ^[30]slew Amulius, ^[31]restored their ^[32]grandfather, to his ^[33]kingdom, and ^[34]built ^[35]Rome 753 years before ^[36]Christ was ^[37]born.

Romulus, having ^[38]put his ^[39]rival brother to ^[40]death, ^[41]was ^[42]proclaimed king by his ^[43]followers; and having ^[44]settled the ^[45]state ^[46]affairs, and ^[47]being in want of females, he ^[48]seized upon all the ^[49]young women that ^[50]came to ^[51]see the ^[52]public ^[53]games at Rome; upon which a ^[54]terrible and long ^[55]war with the ^[56]Sabines ^[57]ensued.

The ^[58]Cæninenses, ^[59]Antemnates, and ^[60]Crustumini were ^[61]conquered; and ^[62]at last the

[63]Sabines, under the [64]conduct of [65]Tatius, [66]bearing hard upon the Romans, by the [67]interposition of the [68]Sabine women who had been [69]detained at Rome, it was [70]agreed upon [71]betwixt both [72]parties, [73]that they should [74]jointly [75]inhabit Rome, and Romulus and Tatius should [76]reign [77]together. Tatius being [78]slain six [79]years after, Romulus reigned [80]alone, and [81]completed the [82]term of 38 years, having conquered the [83]neighbouring cities. At last, [84]a great [85]tempest [86]arising as he [87]held an [88]assembly at the [89]lake of Caprea, [90]he was no where to be found, being [91]torn in pieces by the [92]senators (as it was [93]generally [94]thought) to whom he was [95]now [96]grown [97]odious on [98]account of his [99]cruelty. He [100]first [101]divided the city into [102]thirty [103]curiæ, and [104]three [105]tribes. The [106]poor he [107]put [108]under the [109]protection of the [110]great, whom he [111]named [112]patricii. He [113]triumphed [114]three times [115]over his [116]vanquished [117]enemies; [118]first, over the Cæninenses, and Antemnates, in which [119]war having [120]killed their [121]king [122]Acron [123]with his own hand, he [124]consecrated his first [125]spoils to [126]Jupiter Feretrius; [127]secondly, over the [128]Camerini; [129]thirdly, over the [130]Fidenates, and [131]Veientes. [99]

[132]After an [133]interregnum of a [134]year's continuance, [135]Numa Pompilius, a Sabine, [136]born at [137]Cures, was [138]chosen king by the Romans, 714 years before [139]Christ was [140]born; [141]who [142]applying himself to the [143]preservation of the public [144]quiet, [145]instituted all the [146]religious [147]rites of the Romans. He [148]made an [149]addition of two [150]months to the year, which [151]till that time had [152]consisted of [153]ten, and [154]reigned forty-three years.

[155]The third king of the Romans was [156]Tullus Hostilius, a [157]man of a [158]restless temper, and [159]fit for nothing but war. He [160]conquered the Albans, and [161]destroyed their city, after he had first [162]removed the [163]inhabitants, and all their [164]substance to Rome; and [165]torn to pieces, [166]tied [167]betwixt two [168]chariots, [169]Metius Fusetius, [170]dictator of the [171]Albans, [172]convicted of [173]treachery. He [174]triumphed [175]three times over the Albans, the [176]Fidenates, and the Sabines. He [177]reigned [178]thirty-two years, and [179]perished with his [180]wife, and [181]whole family, by [182]a thunderbolt [183]from heaven. [100]

The [184]fourth king that reigned at Rome was [185]Ancus Martius, [186]grandson to Numa Pompilius, by whom the [187]Latins were [188]subdued, and most of them [189]taken into the city, and [190]settled in the [191]Aventine mount; [192]the Janiculum was [193]fortified by him, a [194]bridge made over the [195]Tiber, and Ostia [196]built. He reigned 24 years.

The [197]fifth king of Rome was [198]Tarquinius Priscus, the [199]son of [200]Demaratus, a [201]Corinthian. He [202]came to Rome from [203]Tarquinii, a [204]town of Etruria, [205]from whence he was [206]called [207]Lucius Tarquinius. After he [208]came to the [209]government, he [210]augmented the [211]senate, [212]subdued the [213]twelve [214]nations of Etruria, and [215]borrowed from them the [216]ensigns of [217]supreme [218]power, the [219]fasces; the [220]trabea; the [221]curule chair; the [222]prætecta; and other [223]things of that [224]kind. He was slain by the sons of [225]Ancus, after he had reigned 38 years.

His [226]son-in-law Servius Tullius, the [227]sixth in [228]order, [229]began his [230]reign in the year 577 before Christ. He was for his [231]rare [232]endowments [233]preferred before those of the royal [234]blood. He first [235]instituted the [236]census, and [237]ordered it to be [238]kept [239]every five years; [240]divided the [241]people into [242]classes, and [243]centuries, and [244]enlarged the city: and after he had [245]governed the [246]kingdom with great [247]applause 44 years, he was [248]murdered through the [249]horrid [250]wickedness of his own [251]daughter, and Tarquin his [252]son-in-law. [101]

The [253]seventh and [254]last king that reigned at Rome was Tarquin, [255]surnamed [256]the Proud, whom [257]most of the [258]old Roman [259]authors [260]affirm to be the son of [261]Priscus; [262]but [263]Dionysius [264]will have him to be his grandson. He [265]governed the [266]kingdom he had [267]procured by his [268]wickedness [269]no better than he got it, being [270]cruel to the [271]senators, and his [272]other [273]subjects. He [274]conquered the [275]Volsci, the Sabines, and Gabii; and having [276]built the [277]Capitol with the [278]spoils of the cities he had [279]taken, he was [280]at last [281]turned out of the city, and of his kingdom, for a [282]violence [283]committed by his [284]son upon [285]Lucretia.

- [1] *duodécimo*
- [2] *re*
- [3] *Latíno*
- [4] *Enéa*
- [5] *Amúlio*
- [6] *ingannáre*
- [7] *fratéllo*
- [8] *Numitóre*
- [9] *drítto*
- [10] *successióne*
- [11] *appartenére*
- [12] *cagióne*
- [13] *età*
- [14] *único*
- [15] *figlia*
- [16] *chiamáre*
- [17] *Rómolo*
- [18] *Remo*
- [19] *geméllo*
- [20] *figlio*
- [21] *Marte*
- [22] *espórre*
- [23] *re*
- [24] *órdine*
- [25] *segretaménte*
- [26] *educáre*
- [27] *Faústulo*
- [28] *pastóre*
- [29] *créscere*
- [30] *uccídere*
- [31] *restituíre*
- [32] *avo*
- [33] *regno*
- [34] *edificáre*
- [35] *Roma*
- [36] *Cristo*
- [37] *náscere*
- [38] *méttere*
- [39] *émolo*
- [40] *morte*
- [41] *éssere*
- [42] *proclamáre*
- [43] *seguáce*
- [44] *regoláre*
- [45] *stato*
- [46] *affáre*
- [47] *avéndo bisógno*
- [48] *pigliáre per forza*
- [49] *gióvane*
- [50] *veníre*

- [51] *vedére*
- [52] *público*
- [53] *giuóco*
- [54] *terribile*
- [55] *guerra*
- [56] *Sabíni*
- [57] *seguíre*
- [58] *Ceninénsi*
- [59] *Antemnáti*
- [60] *Crustumíni*
- [61] *conquistáre*
- [62] *alla fine*
- [63] *Sabíni*
- [64] *comándo*
- [65] *Tázio*
- [66] *malmenando i Románi fieramente*
- [67] *interposizióne*
- [68] *donne Sabíne*
- [69] *ritenére*
- [70] *conveníre*
- [71] *fra*
- [72] *partíto*
- [73] *che*
- [74] *unitaménte*
- [75] *abitáre*
- [76] *regnáre*
- [77] *insiéme*
- [78] *uccidere*
- [79] *anno*
- [80] *solo*
- [81] *compíre*
- [82] *términe*
- [83] *vicíno*
- [84] *grande*
- [85] *borrásca*
- [86] *soppravenire*
- [87] *tenére*
- [88] *assembléa*
- [89] *lago*
- [90] *non si potétte trováre in nissun luógo*
- [91] *messo a brani*
- [92] *senatóre*
- [93] *generalménte*
- [94] *crédere*
- [95] *ormai*
- [96] *diveníre*
- [97] *odióso*
- [98] *cagióne*
- [99] *crudeltà*
- [100] *da princípío*

- [101] *dividere*
- [102] *trenta*
- [103] *cúrie*
- [104] *tre*
- [105] *tribù*
- [106] *i póveri*
- [107] *méttere*
- [108] *sotto*
- [109] *protezióne*
- [110] *grande*
- [111] *chiamáre*
- [112] *patrízio*
- [113] *trionfáre*
- [114] *tre volte*
- [115] *dei*
- [116] *vinto*
- [117] *nemíco*
- [118] *prima*
- [119] *guerra*
- [120] *uccídere*
- [121] *re*
- [122] *Acróne*
- [123] *di propria mano*
- [124] *consacráre*
- [125] *spógliá*
- [126] *Gióve Ferétrio*
- [127] *secóndo*
- [128] *Cameríni*
- [129] *terzo*
- [130] *Fidenáti*
- [131] *Vejénti*
- [132] *dopo*
- [133] *interrégno*
- [134] *anno*
- [135] *Numa Pompílio*
- [136] *nato*
- [137] *Cure*
- [138] *scelto*
- [139] *Cristo*
- [140] *nascesse*
- [141] *il quale*
- [142] *applicársi*
- [143] *preservazióne*
- [144] *pace*
- [145] *istituíre*
- [146] *religióso*
- [147] *rito*
- [148] *fare*
- [149] *addizióne*
- [150] *mese*

- [151] *fin allóra*
- [152] *consístere*
- [153] *diéci*
- [154] *regnáre*
- [155] *il terzo*
- [156] *Túllio Ostúlio*
- [157] *uómo*
- [158] *inquiéto natúra*
- [159] *proprio*
- [160] *conquistáre*
- [161] *distrúggere*
- [162] *trasportáre*
- [163] *abitánte*
- [164] *sostánza*
- [165] *fatto in pezzi*
- [166] *attaccáre*
- [167] *fra*
- [168] *carro*
- [169] *Mezio Fusézio*
- [170] *dittatóre*
- [171] *Albani*
- [172] *convínto*
- [173] *tradiménto*
- [174] *trionfáre*
- [175] *tre volte*
- [176] *Fidénáti*
- [177] *regnáre*
- [178] *trentadue anni*
- [179] *períre*
- [180] *moglie*
- [181] *tutta la sua famíglia*
- [182] *per un fúlmine*
- [183] *caduto dal cielo*
- [184] *quarto*
- [185] *Anco Márzio*
- [186] *nipote*
- [187] *Latíni*
- [188] *soggiogáto*
- [189] *posto*
- [190] *stabilírsi*
- [191] *monte Aventíno*
- [192] *il Gianícolo*
- [193] *fortificáto*
- [194] *ponte*
- [195] *Tevére*
- [196] *edificáto*
- [197] *quinto*
- [198] *Tarquínio Prisco*
- [199] *figlio*
- [200] *Demaráto*

- [201] *Corintéo*
- [202] *veníre*
- [203] *Tarquínio*
- [204] *cíttà*
- [205] *dal quale*
- [206] *chiamáto*
- [207] *Lúcio Tarquínio*
- [208] *perveníre*
- [209] *govérno*
- [210] *aumentáre*
- [211] *senáto*
- [212] *soggiogáre*
- [213] *dódici*
- [214] *nazióne*
- [215] *imprestáre*
- [216] *insegnáre*
- [217] *suprémo*
- [218] *autorità*
- [219] *fasce*
- [220] *trabéa*
- [221] *sédia curúle*
- [222] *pretésta*
- [223] *cosa*
- [224] *sorta*
- [225] *Anco*
- [226] *genero Sérvio Túllio*
- [227] *sesto*
- [228] *órdine*
- [229] *principiáre*
- [230] *regno*
- [231] *raro*
- [232] *qualità*
- [233] *preferíto*
- [234] *sangue reale*
- [235] *istituíre*
- [236] *censo*
- [237] *comando che fosse*
- [238] *rifatto*
- [239] *una volta ogni cinque anni*
- [240] *divídere*
- [241] *pópolo*
- [242] *classe*
- [243] *centúria*
- [244] *estendere*
- [245] *governáre*
- [246] *regno*
- [247] *appláuso*
- [248] *assassináto*
- [249] *orribile*
- [250] *scelleratézza*

[251]	<i>figlia</i>
[252]	<i>genero</i>
[253]	<i>séttimo</i>
[254]	<i>último</i>
[255]	<i>cognomináto</i>
[256]	<i>il supérbo</i>
[257]	<i>la maggior parte</i>
[258]	<i>antíco</i>
[259]	<i>autóre</i>
[260]	<i>affermáre</i>
[261]	<i>Prísco</i>
[262]	<i>ma</i>
[263]	<i>Dionísio</i>
[264]	<i>vuól che sia suo nipotíno</i>
[265]	<i>governáre</i>
[266]	<i>regno</i>
[267]	<i>procuráre</i>
[268]	<i>malvagità</i>
[269]	<i>in un modo non migliore di quello con cui l'aveva ottenuto</i>
[270]	<i>crudele</i>
[271]	<i>senatóre</i>
[272]	<i>altro</i>
[273]	<i>suddito</i>
[274]	<i>debelláre</i>
[275]	<i>Volsci</i>
[276]	<i>edificáre</i>
[277]	<i>Campidóglio</i>
[278]	<i>spóglie</i>
[279]	<i>préndere</i>
[280]	<i>alla fine</i>
[281]	<i>scacciáre</i>
[282]	<i>violenza</i>
[283]	<i>commésso</i>
[284]	<i>fíglío</i>
[285]	<i>Lucrezia</i>

CHAP. III

[102]

(*Of the World, 3545—Of Rome, 245.*)

[1]King Tarquin, with his [2]family, being [3]banished, [4]L. Junius Brutus, and [5]L. Tarquinius Collatinus were [6]made [7]consuls. [8]The former was so [9]severe, that he [10]scourged and [11]beheaded his own sons for [12]favouring [13]the banished kings, being a [14]greater [15]friend to the [16]public [17]liberty than to his own family. A [18]field of the Tarquins, which [19]lay [20]between the city and [21]the Tiber, was [22]consecrated to [23]Mars, and [24]from thence [25]called [26]Campus Martius. [27]Brutus [28]died in the [29]war [30]against the Tarquins, who [31]prevailed upon some of the [32]neighbouring [33]nations to [34]assist them; [35]amongst the [36]rest, Porsena, king of Etruria, [37]made war upon the Romans, in [38]favour of the Tarquins: in which war the [39]bravery of [40]Horatius Coccus was very [41]remarkable, who [42]maintained the [43]fight [44]against the [45]victorious [46]enemy [47]till the [48]bridge on the Tiber was [49]cut down, [50]when he [51]swam and crossed the [52]river. Nor [53]must we [54]pass over in silence the [55]noble [56]attempt of [57]Mutius Scævola, who [58]secretly [59]entered the [60]enemy's [61]camp with a [62]resolution to

[63]kill the king; [64]but having by [65]mistake [66]slain one of his nobles, he [67]thrust his [68]hand into the [69]fire that was upon the [70]altar; which so [71]terrified the king, that he [72]made [73]peace with the Romans, and [74]returned [75]home. [76]After this, the [77]Latins made [78]war upon the Romans, [79]under the [80]conduct of [81]Octavius Mamilius, Tarquin's [82]son-in-law; [83]against whom [84]Posthumius being made [85]dictator, [86]vanquished them in a [87]memorable [88]battle at the [89]lake Regillus.

[103]

[90]Afterwards a war was [91]proclaimed [92]against the [93]Volsci, who had [94]raised some [95]troops, to [96]send to the [97]assistance of the [98]Latins in the [99]former war. The [100]fortune of [101]Caius Marcius Coriolanus was [102]remarkable in that war, who being [103]condemned in his [104]absence, [105]retired amongst the Volsci, and [106]advised them to [107]renew the war; for the [108]management of which, being [109]chosen [110]general with [111]Tullius Accius, after he had [112]routed the Romans in [113]several [114]engagements, and [115]advanced up [116]to the very walls of the city, he was [117]moved by the [118]prayers of his [119]mother, and he [120]raised the [121]siege. After the [122]death of [123]Coriolanus, the Volsci [124]continued the war, and [125]were [126]together with the [127]Æqui, [128]and Hernici, [129]soundly [130]beaten by [131]Spurius Cassius, who had been [132]thrice [133]consul. [134]He being elevated by his [135]success, [136]aspired to the [137]throne, [138]but was [139]prevented in his [140]design, and [141]thrown headlong from the [142]Tarpeian rock.

[104]

In the year 261 from the [143]building of the city, the [144]common people being very [145]much in [146]debt, and [147]provoked by the [148]cruelty of their [149]creditors, [150]retired [151]beyond the [152]Anien into the [153]sacred mount, but were [154]reconciled by the [155]pacific [156]persuasions of [157]Menenius Agrippa; having [158]first [159]obtained from the [160]fathers, that [161]officers should be [162]appointed to [163]screen them from the [164]violence of the [165]patricii, who were [166]called [167]tribunes of the [168]people.

After this, the Romans had a war with the [169]Veientes, which the [170]family of the [171]Fabii [172]undertook to [173]carry on by themselves; and having [174]pitched their camp by the [175]river [176]Cremera, were [177]trepanned by the [178]enemy, and [179]cut off in one [180]day, to the [181]number of 306.

The war with the [182]Volsci [183]continued. They were [184]often [185]vanquished, [186]especially by T. [187]Quintius Cincinnatus, who took [188]Antium, the [189]metropolis of their [190]nation. Cincinnatus being [191]afterwards [192]taken from the [193]plough, and [194]made [195]dictator [196]against the [197]Æqui, he [198]delivered the [199]consul [200]Minucius, who was [201]besieged by them, and [202]obliged the [203]enemy to [204]pass under the [205]yoke.

[105]

In the year 303, [206]after the [207]foundation of the city, and 451 years [208]before [209]Christ, the [210]form of the [211]government was [212]changed. [213]For [214]instead of [215]consuls, the [216]decemviri were [217]set up, with [218]supreme [219]power to [220]make [221]laws for the Roman [222]people, [223]from those which their ambassadors had the year before [224]brought from [225]Greece. But [226]abusing their [227]power, they were [228]obliged to [229]lay down their [230]authority; and the [231]consuls and [232]tribunes were [233]restored.

In the 315th year of the city, Sp. Melius, in the [234]time of a [235]famine, [236]endeavouring to [237]make his way to a [238]throne, by [239]sharing [240]corn [241]amongst the [242]people, was [243]slain by [244]order of [245]Quintius Cincinnatus the [246]dictator, by [247]C. Servilius Ahala [248]master of the horse. In the [249]following year the [250]Fidenates [251]revolted to [252]Lars Tolumnius, king of the [253]Veientes, and [254]put the Roman ambassadors to [255]death, who had their [256]statues [257]erected in the [258]forum. The [259]Veientes [260]in the next year were [261]subdued by [262]Mamercus Æmilius, [263]dictator. [264]Tolumnius was [265]slain by [266]Cornelius Cossus, who was the [267]second from [268]Romulus that [269]dedicated the [270]spoils [271]called [272]Opima to Jupiter [273]Feretrius.

[106]

[274]Censors were [275]set up at Rome in the 311th year of the city, who [276]held their [277]office [278]at first for [279]five [280]years, [281]but were [282]afterwards, in the year 320, [283]reduced by [284]Mamercus Æmilius, [285]dictator, to a year and a [286]half. In the year 323, the [287]dictator [288]A. Posthumius was very [289]successful [290]against the [291]Æqui and the [292]Volsci; but [293]stained the [294]victory with the [295]blood of his own [296]son, whom he [297]beheaded for having [298]fought [299]contrary to his [300]orders.

In the year of the city 358, the [301]town of [302]Veii was [303]taken by [304]Camillus, dictator,

[305]after a [306]siege of [307]ten years. He [308]likewise [309]reduced the [310]Falisci, [311]not so much by his [312]arms, as the [313]opinion they had of his [314]justice.

But after these [315]great [316]successes, the Romans were [317]nearly [318]ruined by the [319]Galli Senones, who having [320]laid [321]siege to [322]Clusium in Etruria, the Romans [323]sent three of the [324]Fabian family ambassadors to them. These, [325]contrary to the [326]law of [327]nations, [328]marched out into the [329]field with the [330]Clusini against the [331]Gauls, which proceeding so [332]incensed the latter, that [333]leaving [334]Clusium, they marched to Rome. The Romans were [335]routed, and [336]put to [337]flight in the very [338]first [339]attack at Allia. After which the city was [340]taken and [341]burnt; the [342]Capitol, [343]whither the [344]flower of the Roman [345]youth [346]retreated, was [347]besieged, and had it not been for Manlius, who was afterwards surnamed [348]Capitolinus, would have been [349]taken by the [350]barbarians in the [351]night time; but he, being [352]awakened by the [353]cackling of [354]geese, and [355]others [356]with him, [357]pushed the [358]Gauls [359]as they [360]came up, [361]headlong down the precipice. [362]In the mean time [363]Camillus, who was [364]then in [365]exile at Ardea, being [366]recalled and [367]made [368]dictator, [369]raised an [370]army, [371]came to Rome, [372]drove them out, and at [373]about [374]eight [375]miles [376]distance from the city [377]utterly [378]destroyed their [379]whole [380]army.

[107]

FOOTNOTES

- [1] *Il re Tarquínio*
- [2] *famiglia*
- [3] *bandito*
- [4] *L. Giúnio Bruto*
- [5] *L. Tarquínio Collatino*
- [6] *fatto*
- [7] *consóle*
- [8] *il primo*
- [9] *sevéro*
- [10] *flagelláre*
- [11] *decapítare*
- [12] *favoríre*
- [13] *i re bandíti*
- [14] *grande*
- [15] *amíco*
- [16] *púbblico*
- [17] *libertà*
- [18] *campo*
- [19] *situato*
- [20] *fra*
- [21] *Tévere*
- [22] *consacráto*
- [23] *Marte*
- [24] *indi*
- [25] *chiamáto*
- [26] *Campo Marzio*
- [27] *Bruto*
- [28] *moríre*
- [29] *guerra*
- [30] *contro*
- [31] *riuscirono a persuadére*
- [32] *vicíno*
- [33] *nazióne*
- [34] *assístere*

- [35] *fra*
- [36] *gli altri*
- [37] *fare*
- [38] *favóre*
- [39] *bravúra*
- [40] *Orázio Coclide*
- [41] *rimarchevole*
- [42] *mantenére*
- [43] *conflitto*
- [44] *contro*
- [45] *vittorióso*
- [46] *nemico*
- [47] *infinchè*
- [48] *ponte*
- [49] *tagliáto*
- [50] *allóra*
- [51] *nuotáre e traversáre*
- [52] *fiúme*
- [53] *dovére*
- [54] *passáre in silenzio*
- [55] *nóbile*
- [56] *intraprèsa*
- [57] *Muzio Scévola*
- [58] *segretaménte*
- [59] *entráre*
- [60] *nemíco*
- [61] *campo*
- [62] *risoluzióne*
- [63] *uccídere*
- [64] *ma*
- [65] *isbáglio*
- [66] *ammazzáre*
- [67] *méttere*
- [68] *mano*
- [69] *fuóco*
- [70] *altáre*
- [71] *spaventáre*
- [72] *fare*
- [73] *pace*
- [74] *ritornáre*
- [75] *casa*
- [76] *dopo*
- [77] *Latíno*
- [78] *guerra*
- [79] *sotto*
- [80] *condóttá*
- [81] *Ottávio Mamílio*
- [82] *genero*
- [83] *contro*
- [84] *Postúmio*

- [85] *dittatóre*
- [86] *víncere*
- [87] *memorábile*
- [88] *battágliá*
- [89] *Lago Regílló*
- [90] *dopo*
- [91] *proclamáre*
- [92] *contro*
- [93] *Volsci*
- [94] *leváre*
- [95] *truppe*
- [96] *mandáre*
- [97] *soccórso*
- [98] *Latíno*
- [99] *precedente*
- [100] *fortúna*
- [101] *Caio Marzio Corioláno*
- [102] *segnaláto*
- [103] *condannáto*
- [104] *assénza*
- [105] *ritirársi*
- [106] *consigliáre*
- [107] *ricominciáre*
- [108] *condótta*
- [109] *scelto*
- [110] *generále*
- [111] *Tullio Accio*
- [112] *sconfitto*
- [113] *parécchie*
- [114] *battágliá*
- [115] *avanzáre*
- [116] *infíno alle mura*
- [117] *commósso*
- [118] *preghiéra*
- [119] *madre*
- [120] *leváre*
- [121] *assédio*
- [122] *morte*
- [123] *Corioláno*
- [124] *continuáre*
- [125] *confederatísi*
- [126] *con gli*
- [127] *Equi*
- [128] *Erníci*
- [129] *furono insieme potentemente*
- [130] *battúto*
- [131] *Spúrio Cássio*
- [132] *tre volte*
- [133] *consóle*
- [134] *questi esaltáto*

- [135] *succésso*
[136] *aspiráre*
[137] *trono*
[138] *ma*
[139] *impedito*
[140] *diségno*
[141] *precipitáto*
[142] *rupe Tarpéa*
[143] *fondazióne*
[144] *plebe*
[145] *molto*
[146] *indebitáto*
[147] *irritáto*
[148] *crudeltà*
[149] *creditóre*
[150] *ritirársi*
[151] *di là*
[152] *Aniéno*
[153] *sacro monte*
[154] *riconciliáto*
[155] *pacífico*
[156] *persuasióne*
[157] *Menénio Agríppa*
[158] *prima*
[159] *ottenúto*
[160] *padre*
[161] *ufficiále*
[162] *costituíto*
[163] *protéggere*
[164] *violénza*
[165] *patrízj*
[166] *chiamáto*
[167] *tribúni*
[168] *popolo*
[169] *Vejénti*
[170] *famíglia*
[171] *Fabj*
[172] *intrapréndere*
[173] *maneggiáre*
[174] *accampáre*
[175] *fiúme*
[176] *Cremera*
[177] *acchiappáre*
[178] *nemíco*
[179] *uccíso*
[180] *giórno*
[181] *número*
[182] *Volsci*
[183] *continuáre*
[184] *spesso*

[185] *vinto*
[186] *specialménte*
[187] *Quínzio Cincinnáto*
[188] *Anzio*
[189] *metrópoli*
[190] *nazióne*
[191] *dopo*
[192] *preso*
[193] *áratro*
[194] *fatto*
[195] *dittatóre*
[196] *contro*
[197] *Equi*
[198] *liberáre*
[199] *consóle*
[200] *Minúcio*
[201] *assediáto*
[202] *forzáre*
[203] *nemico*
[204] *passáre sotto il*
[205] *giógo*
[206] *dopo*
[207] *fondazióne*
[208] *prima*
[209] *Cristo*
[210] *forma*
[211] *govérno*
[212] *cambiáto*
[213] *perchè*
[214] *invéce di*
[215] *consóle*
[216] *decemvíri*
[217] *creáto*
[218] *suprémo*
[219] *autorità*
[220] *fare*
[221] *legge*
[222] *pópolo*
[223] *sul modello di quello*
[224] *portáto*
[225] *Grécia*
[226] *abusáre*
[227] *potére*
[228] *obbligáto*
[229] *dimettere*
[230] *autorità*
[231] *cónsole*
[232] *tribúno*
[233] *ristabilíto*
[234] *tempo*

- [235] *carestia*
- [236] *procuráre*
- [237] *arriváre*
- [238] *trono*
- [239] *distribuíre*
- [240] *grano*
- [241] *fra*
- [242] *popolo*
- [243] *ammazzáto*
- [244] *órdine*
- [245] *Quínzio Cincinnáto*
- [246] *dittatóre*
- [247] *C. Servílio Ahala*
- [248] *maestro della cavalleria*
- [249] *seguénte*
- [250] *Fidenáti*
- [251] *rivoltársi*
- [252] *Larte Tolúnnio*
- [253] *Vejénti*
- [254] *méttere*
- [255] *morte*
- [256] *státua*
- [257] *errétto*
- [258] *fóro*
- [259] *Vejénti*
- [260] *l'anno dopo*
- [261] *soggiogáto*
- [262] *Mamérco Emílio*
- [263] *dittatóre*
- [264] *Tolúnnio*
- [265] *ammazzáto*
- [266] *Cornélio Cosso*
- [267] *secóndo*
- [268] *Romolo*
- [269] *dedicáre*
- [270] *spógliá*
- [271] *chiamáto*
- [272] *Opíme*
- [273] *Gióve Feretrio*
- [274] *censóre*
- [275] *stabilíre*
- [276] *tenére*
- [277] *ufficio*
- [278] *al princípio*
- [279] *cinque*
- [280] *anno*
- [281] *ma*
- [282] *dopo*
- [283] *ridótto*
- [284] *Mamérco Emílio*

[285] *dittatóre*
[286] *mezzo*
[287] *dittatóre*
[288] *A. Postúmio*
[289] *fortunáto*
[290] *contro*
[291] *Equi*
[292] *Volsci*
[293] *macchiáre*
[294] *vittória*
[295] *sangue*
[296] *figlio*
[297] *decapítáre*
[298] *combáttere*
[299] *contro*
[300] *órdine*
[301] *città*
[302] *Vej*
[303] *preso*
[304] *Camílllo*
[305] *dopo*
[306] *assédio*
[307] *diéci*
[308] *pariménte*
[309] *ridúrre*
[310] *Falísci*
[311] *non tanto*
[312] *arme*
[313] *opinióne*
[314] *giustízia*
[315] *grande*
[316] *riuscita*
[317] *quasi*
[318] *rovináto*
[319] *Galli Sénoni*
[320] *méttere*
[321] *assédio*
[322] *Clusio*
[323] *mandáre*
[324] *famíglia de' Fabj*
[325] *contro*
[326] *diritto*
[327] *gente*
[328] *marciáre*
[329] *campo*
[330] *Clusíni*
[331] *Galli*
[332] *irritáre*
[333] *lasciáre*
[334] *Clusio*

- [335] *sconfitto*
[336] *messo*
[337] *fuga*
[338] *primo*
[339] *attacco*
[340] *preso*
[341] *abbruciato*
[342] *Campidoglio*
[343] *dove*
[344] *fiore*
[345] *gioventù*
[346] *ritirarsi*
[347] *assediato*
[348] *Capitolino*
[349] *preso*
[350] *bárbaro*
[351] *notte tempo*
[352] *svegliato*
[353] *il gracchiare*
[354] *oca*
[355] *altro*
[356] *con*
[357] *buttare*
[358] *Galli*
[359] *a misura che*
[360] *presentarsi*
[361] *a capo in giù nel precipizio*
[362] *nell'istesso tempo*
[363] *Camillo*
[364] *allóra*
[365] *esilio*
[366] *richiamato*
[367] *fatto*
[368] *dittatore*
[369] *levare*
[370] *armata*
[371] *venire*
[372] *scacciare*
[373] *incirca*
[374] *otto*
[375] *miglia*
[376] *distanza*
[377] *completamente*
[378] *distruggere*
[379] *tutto*
[380] *armata*

CHAP. IV.

(Of the World, 3670—Of Rome, 370.)

The city being [1]destroyed by the Gauls, the Romans had [2]thoughts of [3]leaving it, and [4]removing to [5]Veii; but were [6]dissuaded from that [7]design by [8]Camillus; [9]whilst [10]Marcus Manlius (who [11]obtained the [12]surname of [13]Capitolinus for his [14]noble [15]defence of the [16]Capitol) [17]endeavoured by [18]ambition and [19]popular [20]favour [21]to possess himself of the [22]supreme [23]power, he was [24]thrown from the [25]Tarpeian rock, which he had [26]defended, in the year 370.

In the year 377, there was a [27]strong [28]contest [29]between the [30]nobility and the [31]people. [32]C. Licinius Stolo and [33]L. Sextius, [34]tribunes of [35]the people, [36]proposed a [37]law for [38]choosing [39]one of the consuls out [40]of the people. They [41]carried their point at last, in the year 387, and in the [42]following year [43]L. Sextius was elected consul.

[44]After this, the Romans had [45]war with the [46]Tiburtes, the [47]Tarquinenses, and [48]Falisci; and again with the [49]Gauls, who being [50]drawn up [51]in order of [52]battle, one of them [53]sent a [54]challenge to the Romans, and was [55]slain by [56]one M. Valerius, a [57]tribune of the [58]soldiers, by the [59]assistance of a [60]crow, who [61]from thence had the [62]surname of [63]Corvinus.

[109]

[64]But of all their [65]wars, none was more [66]troublesome and [67]lasting than that [68]against the [69]Samnites; which the Romans [70]undertook the year of the city 411, at the [71]request of the [72]Campani. It [73]lasted [74]seventy years; [75]though they were [76]several times [77]beaten, as in the year 413, in which the [78]Latins [79]rose up in arms [80]against the Romans, but were the year after [81]conquered by the [82]consuls Torquatus and Decius; the [83]former of whom [84]beheaded his own [85]son for [86]fighting [87]without his [88]order; the [89]other [90]devoted himself to [91]destruction for the [92]army; after which the [93]enemies [94]submitted, but [95]soon after [96]rebellng again, they were [97]at last [98]entirely [99]reduced in the year 416.

[100]About this time the [101]Gauls [102]made a [103]peace with the Romans, which they [104]kept [105]thirty years. But in 450, the [106]Cisalpine, [107]together with the [108]Transalpine [109]Gauls, and the [110]Tuscans, [111]laid waste the [112]Roman [113]territories. The Cisalpine [114]returning [115]home [116]loaded with [117]spoils, [118]fell out together about them. [119]Four years after that, having [120]joined the [121]Samnites and [122]Tuscans, they fell [123]upon the Roman [124]army [125]commanded by [126]L. Scipio, the [127]proprætor, in which [128]battle, [129]P. Decius [130]the consul [131]devoted himself.

[110]

[132]Ten years after this, the [133]Galli Senones being [134]invited by the [135]Lucani, [136]Bruttii, Samnites, and Tuscans, [137]besieged [138]Aretium, and having [139]vanquished [140]L. Cæcilius the [141]prætor, [142]killed 13,000 Romans; which [143]overthrow the consul Dolabella [144]revenged upon them [145]soon after; for having [146]routed the [147]Gauls, and [148]taken their city of Sena, [149]he sent a [150]colony there. The [151]Boii being [152]moved at the [153]hard [154]fate of the [155]Senones, [156]entered into an [157]alliance with the [158]Tuscans, and [159]engaged the Romans at the [160]lake of [161]Vadimon; in which [162]battle [163]almost [164]all the Tuscans were [165]slain, and very [166]few of the Boii [167]escaped. This [168]happened in the year of the city 471; but in the [169]following year the Boii were [170]entirely [171]reduced, which was [172]about three years [173]before [174]Pyrrhus, [175]came into [176]Italy.

The [177]Palæpolitani [178]likewise, [179]where [180]now [181]Naples is, [182]venturing to make war upon the Romans, were [183]subdued the third year [184]after, [185]that is to say, in the year of the city 428, by [186]Publius the proconsul.

[111]

The [187]twelve [188]nations of the Tuscans, [189]rising for the [190]utter ruin [191]of the Roman name in the year of the city 442, were [192]routed in a great [193]battle by Fabius the [194]consul, in the [195]year 444, in which were [196]slain, or [197]taken of the [198]enemy, to the [199]number of 60,000.

In the year 472, the [200]Tarentines, [201]brought the [202]Romans against them [203]by plundering their [204]fleet, and [205]assailing their [206]ambassadors, who [207]came to [208]complain of the [209]injury. They, [210]together with the [211]Samnites, and [212]Salentines, were [213]defeated by L. [214]Æmilius Barbula. [215]Terrified at this [216]ill fortune, they [217]sent for [218]Pyrrhus to their [219]assistance; who, in the year of the city 474, having [220]brought over an [221]army into [222]Italy, [223]waged against the Romans [224]a war which [225]lasted six years. In the [226]first [227]encounter the Romans, [228]headed by [229]Lævinus, being [230]conquered, not so much by the [231]strength of

the [232]enemy, as by the [233]strange [234]shape of the [235]elephants, [236]yielded up the [237]day: Pyrrhus [238]dismissed all the [239]prisoners [240]without [241]ransom. [242]Soon after, having [243]made some [244]fruitless [245]overtures of [246]peace by his [247]ambassador [248]Cyneas ([249]for [250]Appius Claudius [251]obstructed it), he [252]engaged the Romans [253]twice: the [254]victory [255]both times being [256]dubious. He was [257]then [258]invited by the [259]Syracusans [260]into Sicily against [261]the Carthaginians; [262]where [263]matters [264]not succeeding [265]according to his [266]desires, he [267]returned into [268]Italy in the year 479; and being [269]defeated, [270]forced out of his [271]camp, and [272]beaten from [273]Tarentum, he returned into [274]Epirus.

[112]

FOOTNOTES

- [1] *distrúggere*
- [2] *idea*
- [3] *abbandonáre*
- [4] *traslocarsi*
- [5] *Vej*
- [6] *dissuáso*
- [7] *diségno*
- [8] *Camílo*
- [9] *mentre*
- [10] *Marco Mánlio*
- [11] *ottenere*
- [12] *cognóme*
- [13] *Capitolíno*
- [14] *nóbile*
- [15] *difésa*
- [16] *campidóglio*
- [17] *cercáre*
- [18] *ambizione*
- [19] *popoláre*
- [20] *favóre*
- [21] *impadronírsi*
- [22] *suprémo*
- [23] *potére*
- [24] *precipitáto*
- [25] *rocca Tarpéa*
- [26] *diféndere*
- [27] *grande*
- [28] *contésa*
- [29] *fra*
- [30] *nobiltà*
- [31] *popolo*
- [32] *C. Licínio Stolone*
- [33] *L. Séstio*
- [34] *tribúno*
- [35] *popolo*
- [36] *propórre*
- [37] *legge*
- [38] *scegliere*
- [39] *cónsole*
- [40] *d'infra'l popolo*
- [41] *riuscíre*

- [42] *seguénte*
[43] *L. Séstio fu eletto cónsole*
[44] *dopo*
[45] *guerra*
[46] *Tibúrti*
[47] *Tarquiniési*
[48] *Falísci*
[49] *Gálli*
[50] *méttersi*
[51] *órdine*
[52] *battágliá*
[53] *mandáre*
[54] *disfída*
[55] *uccídere*
[56] *certo M. Valério*
[57] *tribúno*
[58] *soldato*
[59] *assisténza*
[60] *corvo*
[61] *da ció*
[62] *cognóme*
[63] *Corvino*
[64] *ma*
[65] *guerra*
[66] *gravóso*
[67] *lunga*
[68] *contro*
[69] *Sanníti*
[70] *intrapréndere*
[71] *richiésta*
[72] *Campáni*
[73] *duráre*
[74] *settánta*
[75] *benchè*
[76] *spesse volte*
[77] *battúto*
[78] *Latíno*
[79] *préndere l'armi*
[80] *contro*
[81] *vincere*
[82] *cónsoli Torquáto e Decio*
[83] *primo*
[84] *decapítáre*
[85] *figliuólo*
[86] *aver combáttuto*
[87] *senza*
[88] *órdine*
[89] *altro*
[90] *consacrársi*
[91] *morte*

- [92] *armáta*
- [93] *nemíco*
- [94] *sottomettérsi*
- [95] *poco dopo*
- [96] *ribelláre*
- [97] *alla fine*
- [98] *affátto*
- [99] *ridótto*
- [100] *incírca*
- [101] *Galli*
- [102] *fare*
- [103] *pace*
- [104] *mantenere*
- [105] *trenta*
- [106] *Cisalpíno*
- [107] *assieme con*
- [108] *Transalpíno*
- [109] *Galli*
- [110] *Toscáni*
- [111] *dare il guasto a*
- [112] *Románo*
- [113] *território*
- [114] *ritornáre*
- [115] *casa*
- [116] *carico*
- [117] *spógliá*
- [118] *contendere*
- [119] *quattro*
- [120] *unírsi*
- [121] *Sanníti*
- [122] *Toscáni*
- [123] *assalíre*
- [124] *armáta*
- [125] *comandáre*
- [126] *L. Scipióne*
- [127] *propretóre*
- [128] *battáglia*
- [129] *P. Decio*
- [130] *cónsole*
- [131] *sacrificò se stesso*
- [132] *diéci*
- [133] *Galli Senoni*
- [134] *invitáto*
- [135] *Lucáni*
- [136] *Bruzi*
- [137] *assedíare*
- [138] *Arezzo*
- [139] *víncere*
- [140] *L. Cecílio*
- [141] *pretore*

- [142] *ammazzáre*
[143] *sconfitta*
[144] *vendicáre*
[145] *poco dopo*
[146] *sconfiggere*
[147] *Galli*
[148] *preso*
[149] *mandáre*
[150] *colónia*
[151] *Boj*
[152] *commóssu*
[153] *duro*
[154] *condizione*
[155] *Senoni*
[156] *entráre*
[157] *alleánza*
[158] *Toscáni*
[159] *veníre a giornáta con*
[160] *lago*
[161] *Vadimóne*
[162] *battáglia*
[163] *quasi*
[164] *tutto*
[165] *uccíso*
[166] *poco*
[167] *scampáre*
[168] *succédere*
[169] *segunte*
[170] *affátto*
[171] *sottomesso*
[172] *incírca*
[173] *primachè*
[174] *Pirro*
[175] *veníre*
[176] *Itália*
[177] *Palepolitáni*
[178] *pariménte*
[179] *dove*
[180] *adésso*
[181] *Napóli*
[182] *avventuráre*
[183] *soggiogáto*
[184] *dopo*
[185] *cioè a dire*
[186] *próconsole Públio*
[187] *dódici*
[188] *nazióne*
[189] *essendosi levate in armi*
[190] *totale*
[191] *sterminio*

[192] *sconfiggere*
[193] *battaglia*
[194] *cónsole*
[195] *anno*
[196] *ucciso*
[197] *preso*
[198] *nemíco*
[199] *numero*
[200] *Tarentíni*
[201] *tirársi addósso*
[202] *Románo*
[203] *saccheggiaere*
[204] *flotta*
[205] *maltrattáre*
[206] *ambasciadóre*
[207] *veníre*
[208] *lamentársi*
[209] *ingiúria*
[210] *insiéme*
[211] *Sanníti*
[212] *Salentíni*
[213] *sconfitto*
[214] *Emílio Bárbula*
[215] *spaventáto*
[216] *sventúra*
[217] *mandár a cercáre*
[218] *Pirro*
[219] *ajúto*
[220] *trasportáre*
[221] *armáta*
[222] *Itália*
[223] *fare*
[224] *guerra*
[225] *duráre*
[226] *prima*
[227] *zuffa*
[228] *comandáto*
[229] *Lavínio*
[230] *superato*
[231] *sforza*
[232] *nemíco*
[233] *strano*
[234] *forma*
[235] *elefánte*
[236] *cédere*
[237] *vittoria*
[238] *rimandáre*
[239] *prigioniéro*
[240] *senza*
[241] *taglia*

[242]	<i>poco dopo</i>
[243]	<i>fatto</i>
[244]	<i>inútile</i>
[245]	<i>trattative</i>
[246]	<i>pace</i>
[247]	<i>ambasciadóre</i>
[248]	<i>Cinéa</i>
[249]	<i>perchè</i>
[250]	<i>Áppio Cláudio</i>
[251]	<i>impedíre</i>
[252]	<i>attaccáre</i>
[253]	<i>due volte</i>
[254]	<i>vittória</i>
[255]	<i>due</i>
[256]	<i>dubbio</i>
[257]	<i>allóra</i>
[258]	<i>invitáto</i>
[259]	<i>Siracuséi</i>
[260]	<i>ad andáre in</i>
[261]	<i>Cartaginése</i>
[262]	<i>dove</i>
[263]	<i>cosa</i>
[264]	<i>riuscíre</i>
[265]	<i>secóndo</i>
[266]	<i>desiderio</i>
[267]	<i>ritornáre</i>
[268]	<i>Itália</i>
[269]	<i>sconfitto</i>
[270]	<i>forzato di sloggiáre</i>
[271]	<i>accampamento</i>
[272]	<i>scacciato</i>
[273]	<i>Táranto</i>
[274]	<i>Epíro</i>

CHAP. V.

(Of the World, 3790—Of Rome, 490.)

[1]After this, a [2]war [3]broke out [4]between the Romans and the [5]Carthaginians, in the year of the city 490, [6]occasioned by the [7]ambition and [8]formidable [9]power of each of them. [10]Hiero, king of Syracuse, and [11]ally of the Carthaginians, [12]made war against the [13]Mamertini, who had [14]seized upon Messana. They [15]applied to the Romans for [16]help, who [17]carrying over an [18]army into [19]Sicily, [20]fell upon Hiero, and the Carthaginians. The [21]fortune of the war was for a [22]long time very [23]doubtful; the Carthaginians [24]being successful by [25]sea, and the Romans by [26]land. The most [27]memorable [28]person in all this war was [29]Attilius Regulus, who having [30]brought the Carthaginians [31]very low by two [32]victories [33]obtained over them at sea and land; and [34]refusing to [35]grant them [36]peace but upon [37]hard terms, he was [38]vanquished by [39]Xantippus the [40]Lacedæmonian [41]general, and [42]taken [43]prisoner with 15,000 [44]men, 30,000 being [45]slain, in the year 498. Being [46]afterwards [47]sent to [48]Rome by the [49]Carthaginians, to [50]treat with the [51]senate upon an [52]exchange of [53]prisoners, he [54]interposed to [55]prevent it, and [56]returning to [57]Carthage, was [58]put to [59]death in the most [60]cruel [61]manner [62]imaginable, as [63]many [64]authors [65]tell us. The [66]first among the

Romans that [67]obtained a [68]victory by sea, was C. [69]Duilius, in the first year of this [70]war. C. [71]Lutatius [72]gained [73]another in the 23rd and [74]last year; in which he [75]made an end of the war with the Carthaginians, [76]near the [77]island of the [78]Ægates. A [79]peace was [80]concluded upon these [81]terms, that they should [82]quit all the islands which [83]lie between Italy and Africa, and should [84]pay [85]yearly 2,200 [86]talents for [87]twenty years [88]together. This [89]happened in the year of the city 513, and 241 before [90]Christ.

[114]

In the year 519, the [91]temple of [92]Janus was [93]shut, which very rarely [94]happened in Rome; but upon the [95]breaking out of new wars, it was [96]soon [97]open again. The [98]Ligures, the Sardi, and Corsi were [99]subdued; after which the Romans [100]had war with the [101]Illyrians, and their [102]queen Teuta, which war was [103]ended in [104]three years time. There [105]happened [106]about this [107]time a [108]dreadful [109]irruption of the [110]Gauls. The [111]Insubres and [112]Boii, having [113]first [114]sent for some [115]transalpine Gauls, [116]fell upon the Romans, [117]on account of the [118]land in Picene, that had been [119]taken from the Galli [120]Senones, and [121]disposed of by [122]Flaminius, [123]tribune of the [124]people, by virtue of the [125]Agrarian law, [126]made in the year of the city 452. They were [127]several times [128]worsted, and the Insubres [129]entirely [130]subdued, and king [131]Viridumarus [132]slain by C. [133]Marcellus, the [134]consul, who was the only person after [135]Romulus that [136]consecrated [137]Opima Spolia to [138]Jupiter Feretrius. In this war Hiero, king of Sicily, [139]sent the Romans a [140]vast quantity of [141]corn, the [142]price of which he [143]received after the war was [144]ended.

After this, [145]followed a [146]second war with the Carthaginians, four and twenty years after the [147]end of the [148]former; which [149]indeed did not [150]last [151]so long, but was [152]so much more [153]terrible for the [154]dreadful [155]slaughter that was made in it ([156]says Florus) that if [157]any one [158]compared the [159]losses on [160]each side, the [161]people that [162]proved [163]victorious [164]seemed more [165]likely to be [166]conquered. The first cause of this war was the [167]same with that of the former, [168]ambition and the [169]impatience of the Carthaginians [170]under their [171]servitude. The first cause of this [172]combustion was [173]Hannibal, the son of [174]Hamilcar, who was [175]general of the [176]Carthaginians in the [177]former [178]war, and had [179]accepted the [180]conditions of peace [181]with a heavy heart. For after [182]affairs were [183]settled in Africa, being [184]sent into [185]Spain, in the year of the city 517, he [186]carried along with him Hannibal, who [187]was then nine years old, having [188]first [189]brought him before an [190]altar, and [191]made him [192]swear that he [193]never would be a [194]friend to the Romans. Hamilcar being [195]slain about nine years after, Asdrubal, his son-in-law, was [196]put in his [197]place. He [198]sent for Hannibal, and being slain himself eight years after, was [199]succeeded by him, [200]being in the 27th year of his age. [201]As soon as he was made [202]general, he [203]conquered all Spain within the river [204]Iberus. After that he [205]fell upon the [206]town of [207]Saguntum with all his [208]forces, and [209]took it, after a [210]siege of seven [211]months. The [212]Saguntines having [213]in vain [214]waited for [215]assistance from the Romans, [216]were all destroyed [217]partly by the [218]enemy's [219]sword, and [220]partly by their own [221]hands. This war [222]broke out in the year of the city 536; and [223]lasted seventeen years.

[115]

[116]

Upon the first [224]coming of Hannibal into Italy, both the [225]consuls were [226]defeated, P. [227]Cornelius at [228]Ticinum, and [229]Sempronius at Trebia. They [230]received a greater [231]overthrow the [232]following year near the [233]Thrasymene [234]lake. [235]In the mean time, Q. [236]Fabius Maximus being made [237]dictator by the [238]people, [239]recovered in some [240]measure the Roman [241]affairs. But the most [242]fatal [243]stroke was that of Cannæ, in the year of the city 538, [244]occasioned by the [245]rashness of one of the [246]consuls, [247]Terentius Varro. [248]Forty thousand Romans were [249]killed in that [250]battle: [251]however, their [252]courage was not [253]cast down by this [254]overthrow; [255]for they would not [256]redeem those that had been [257]taken [258]prisoners, in the battle of Cannæ. In the year 540, the [259]consul [260]Marcellus [261]besieged [262]Syracuse, which had [263]declared for the Carthaginians; it was [264]wonderfully [265]defended a long time by the [266]contrivance of [267]Archimedes, who was an [268]excellent [269]astronomer, but more [270]famous for the [271]invention of [272]military [273]engines. It was [274]taken [275]at last with [276]much [277]difficulty, after a [278]siege of three years. We are [279]told that Archimedes being very [280]intent upon his [281]study at that time, and not [282]minding the [283]hurry, and [284]noise of the [285]army, when they [286]broke into the [287]town, was [288]killed by a [289]soldier; that Marcellus was much [290]concerned for his [291]death, having [292]given [293]strict [294]charge to his [295]men to [296]spare his [297]life.

[117]

[298]In the mean time, [299]Lævinus the [300]prætor [301]stopt [302]Philip king of [303]Macedon, who having made an [304]alliance with Hannibal, was [305]ready to [306]come into Italy, and [307]forced him to [308]burn his [309]fleet, and [310]retreat into Macedon, in the year of the city 542. But in Spain, the two [311]brothers P. and C. [312]Scipio, who had [313]till then [314]prevented Hasdrubal's [315]passage into Italy to his brother Hannibal, and had [316]performed a great many [317]gallant actions, were both slain, and their [318]armies [319]destroyed. L. Marcus, a Roman knight, being [320]chosen general, by the [321]votes of the [322]soldiers, [323]upheld their [324]tottering [325]cause; by whose [326]conduct in one [327]day, and a [328]night, two [329]camps of the [330]enemy were [331]taken by [332]assault, and about [333]thirty-seven thousand [334]men [335]slain. The [336]same year [337]Tarentum, [338]except the [339]citadel, was taken by Hannibal; and Capua [340]besieged by the Romans; and Hannibal [341]marched to Rome to [342]draw them from it. But a [343]sudden [344]storm [345]arising, [346]forced him from the [347]walls, and the [348]sight of it. Capua was after that [349]surrendered to the Romans, the [350]grandees of which [351]poisoned themselves; the [352]senators were [353]beheaded, and the city [354]deprived of its [355]liberty. [118]

There was a [356]son of that P. Scipio, who, as we have said was [357]killed in [358]Spain, [359]named [360]likewise P. Scipio, who after the [361]death of his [362]father and [363]uncle, was [364]sent into Spain, [365]being but twenty-four years old. There having [366]performed very great [367]things, and [368]vanquished Hasdrubal, the son of [369]Gisco and [370]Mago, [371]he drove the Carthaginians out of Spain, in five years after he [372]came there; from thence [373]passing over into Africa, he [374]made an [375]alliance with [376]Syphax, king of the [377]Masylians, and after that with Masanissa, king of the [378]Masasulians. These things [379]were done in the year 548, and the [380]third from the [381]death of [382]Marcellus; who having been [383]successful in [384]several [385]battles with Hannibal, was [386]at last, [387]trepanned by an [388]ambuscade, and slain. In the [389]following year, Hasdrubal was [390]cut off, with his [391]army [392]before he could [393]join his [394]brother, by the two [395]consuls, [396]Claudius Nero and [397]Livius Salinator. Hannibal was [398]then in Apulia, [399]opposed by Nero the consul. [400]Livy was [401]encamped in [402]Cisalpine Gaul [403]against Hasdrubal, Nero [404]marched [405]through Italy [406]privately, in six [407]days time, [408]came to the [409]camp of his [410]colleague with a [411]part of his [412]army, and having [413]conquered the [414]enemy, [415]returned to his camp before Hannibal [416]perceived that he was [417]gone. There are [418]said to have been 56,000 of the [419]enemy [420]slain in the [421]battle, and 5,400 [422]taken [423]prisoners. The head [424]of Hasdrubal was [425]thrown before the [426]advanced guard of the Carthaginians by Nero. [119]

P. Scipio [427]resolved to [428]carry the [429]war into Africa, that he might [430]draw Hannibal out of Italy; but [431]at first that being [432]looked upon as a [433]rash [434]design, he had neither [435]money nor [436]men from the [437]government. [438]Wherefore, having [439]raised none but [440]volunteers, and [441]borrowed money, he first [442]went to [443]Sicily, and [444]from thence to Africa, in the year 550; [445]when the [446]image of the [447]Idæan mother was [448]brought from [449]Pessinus in [450]Phrygia, to Rome, [451]according to the [452]advice of [453]the oracle. [120]

The general [454]employed [455]against him by the [456]Carthaginians was Hasdrubal, the son of Gisco, who had [457]contracted his daughter [458]Sophonisba to Masanissa. But the Carthaginians had [459]given her to [460]Syphax, (who being [461]in love with the [462]young lady, [463]laid waste their [464]country in the [465]absence of her [466]father and [467]husband) to [468]take him off from the Roman [469]alliance: at which [470]usage Masanissa being [471]incensed, he [472]gave himself up [473]entirely to the Roman [474]interest, and was very [475]serviceable to them in [476]reducing the Carthaginians.

[477]After a great many [478]overthrows, the Carthaginians [479]found themselves [480]obliged to [481]recall Hannibal out of Italy, to the [482]defence of their country, where, after a [483]fruitless [484]overture of [485]peace, he was [486]vanquished by Scipio, and an [487]end was put to the [488]war, after it had [489]lasted seven years.

The second [490]Punic war was [491]followed by the [492]Macedonian, [493]against king Philip. That which put the Romans upon it was the [494]former injuries [495]Philip had done them, [496]as likewise the late [497]vexation he had given their [498]allies, [499]especially the Athenians, who being [500]harassed by the king, [501]fled to the Romans. [502]At length [503]Titus Quinctius Flaminius [504]put an end to the war, four years after it [505]began, by the [506]conquest of Philip at [507]Cynoscephalæ, in [508]Thessaly. [121]

After this [509]followed the war with [510]Antiochus, king of Asia, who having [511]recovered Syria, and [512]conquered Scopas, the general of [513]Ptolemæus Epiphanes, [514]began now to be [515]formidable to the Romans, [516]against whom Hannibal did not a little [517]inflame him; who, for [518]fear of the same [519]enemy, had [520]fled to the king. The [521]ambassadors of the [522]Ætolians too, who were now [523]averse to the Roman [524]alliance, [525]contributed not a [526]little towards it. Antiochus [527]therefore having [528]clapped up a peace with [529]Ptolemy, to whom he [530]gave his daughter Cleopatra in [531]marriage, and [532]granted [533]Cœlo Syria, and [534]Judea by way of [535]portion, [536]made war upon the Romans, which being begun in the year of the city 562, [537]lasted three years in all. For in the year 565, L. [538]Cornelius Scipio the [539]consul, [540]going over into Asia, with his brother P. Scipio [541]Africanus, as his [542]lieutenant, did, by the [543]assistance, [544]chiefly of his [545]counsel, [546]conquer Antiochus. Livy [547]tells us, there were 50,000 [548]foot [549]slain in one [550]battle, and 4,000 [551]horse. A peace was [552]granted Antiochus [553]upon the following condition [554]among others, that he should [555]recede [556]from all the countries [557]on this side [558]mount Taurus.

[122]

After Antiochus was [559]conquered, the Ætolians were [560]reduced by Fulvius the consul; and the same year the Gallo-Greci were [561]subdued by the other [562]consul, Cneius Manlius.

In the 149th [563]Olympiad [564]died three [565]famous generals, P. Scipio, Hannibal, and [566]Philopæmen. Scipio was [567]impeached for [568]taking [569]money of Antiochus for the peace [570]he granted him; after which he [571]retired to [572]Liturnum in Campania, and [573]died there in the year of the city 570. Hannibal a year or two after (for [574]historians are not [575]agreed upon the [576]matter) being [577]demanded of Drusias, king of Bythynia, by the Roman [578]ambassadors, [579]in order to be [580]put to [581]death, [582]poisoned himself. [583]About the [584]same time Philopæmen, general of the [585]Achæans, was [586]taken by the [587]Messenians, and [588]slain, after he had [589]forced to a [590]submission the Lacedæmonians, who had [591]thrown off the Achæan [592]alliance.

In the mean time Philip, being [593]checked [594]rather than [595]conquered in the [596]former war, was [597]very busy in [598]making [599]preparations for [600]another; but before [601]matters were [602]ripe [603]enough [604]for that purpose, he died, and was [605]succeeded by his son [606]Perseus, who [607]went on with the [608]preparations of war [609]against the Romans; which was [610]finished in four years after its [611]beginning with the [612]ruin of him and the [613]kingdom of Macedon [614]together, in the year of the city 586. The general [615]employed by the Romans in that war, was [616]Paulus Æmilius, who in one [617]battle, [618]wherein were slain 20,000 [619]men, and 11,000 [620]taken [621]prisoners, [622]put a [623]final period to the [624]Macedonian [625]empire in the [626]11th year of king Perseus. About the same time, [627]Gentius, king of the [628]Illyrians, being [629]trepanned into an [630]alliance by Perseus, was [631]conquered by [632]Amicius the [633]prætor.

[123]

After the [634]conquest of Antiochus, the Macedonians [635]rebelled again, but were [636]subdued, and Macedon [637]reduced to the [638]rank of a [639]province.

Some time after a war [640]broke out with the [641]Achæans, who having [642]pulled down all the [643]walls of [644]Lacedæmon, and [645]taken away their [646]ancient [647]laws, had [648]obliged them to [649]unite with them; which the Lacedæmonians [650]complained of to the Romans, who [651]sent [652]against the Achæans Metellus the prætor, by whom they were [653]defeated in two [654]engagements at [655]Thermopylæ, and in [656]Phocis; and [657]presently after [658]entirely reduced by the consul [659]L. Nummius, and [660]Corinth, the [661]metropolis of their [662]nation, [663]burnt.

[124]

The same year Carthage was [664]taken and [665]destroyed. The [666]occasion of this war was a [667]difference [668]between Masanissa and the Carthaginians [669]about their [670]territories; which [671]controversy being [672]referred to the Romans, they obliged the Carthaginians to [673]give up the [674]country in [675]dispute, and [676]money, also, to Masanissa. But the Romans had [677]before-hand [678]resolved [679]utterly to [680]raze Carthage, [681]right or wrong, [682]chiefly at the [683]instigation of [684]Marcus Cato the censor, who, whenever he [685]gave his [686]opinion upon any [687]debate in the [688]senate, [689]used [690]finally to [691]add, Carthage [692]must be [693]destroyed. [694]Wherefore in the year of the city 605, Carthage was [695]besieged by the consuls [696]Manilius and [697]Censorinus. They soon after [698]surrendered to the Romans; but being [699]ordered to [700]demolish their city, and [701]fix themselves at ten [702]miles [703]distance from the [704]sea, they were so [705]inflamed with [706]fury and [707]despair, that they [708]held out

[125]

even [709]beyond their [710]strength, [711]till in the fourth year, the [712]same in which [713]Corinth was destroyed, it was [714]taken by [715]P. Cornelius Scipio, the [716]proconsul, who was [717]Paulus Æmilius's son, and had been [718]adopted by the son of Scipio Africanus. At the [719]beginning of the war Masanissa, king of the [720]Numidians, [721]died, in the 97th year of his [722]age, having [723]left behind him forty-four sons, and [724]continued [725]an ally of the Romans near 60 years.

FOOTNOTES

- [1] *dopo*
- [2] *guerra*
- [3] *destarsi*
- [4] *tra*
- [5] *Cartaginése*
- [6] *causáre*
- [7] *ambizióne*
- [8] *formidábile*
- [9] *potére*
- [10] *Gerone*
- [11] *alleáto*
- [12] *guerreggiáre*
- [13] *Mamertíni*
- [14] *usurpáto*
- [15] *ricorrere*
- [16] *ajúto*
- [17] *trasportáre*
- [18] *armáta*
- [19] *Sicília*
- [20] *attaccáre*
- [21] *sorte*
- [22] *lungo tempo*
- [23] *incérto*
- [24] *prosperando*
- [25] *mare*
- [26] *terra*
- [27] *memorábile*
- [28] *persóna*
- [29] *Attilio Régolo*
- [30] *abbattúto*
- [31] *fortemente*
- [32] *vittória*
- [33] *riportáto*
- [34] *rifiutáre*
- [35] *accordáre*
- [36] *pace*
- [37] *dure condizioni*
- [38] *vinto*
- [39] *Santíppo*
- [40] *Lacedémone*
- [41] *generále*
- [42] *fatto*
- [43] *prigióné*
- [44] *uómo*

- [45] *ucciso*
- [46] *indi*
- [47] *mandáto*
- [48] *Roma*
- [49] *Cartaginési*
- [50] *trattáre*
- [51] *senáto*
- [52] *cámbio*
- [53] *prigioniéro*
- [54] *interpórre*
- [55] *impedíre*
- [56] *tornáre*
- [57] *CartáGINE*
- [58] *nesso*
- [59] *morte*
- [60] *crudéle*
- [61] *maniera*
- [62] *immaginábile*
- [63] *molto*
- [64] *autóre*
- [65] *rapportáre*
- [66] *primo*
- [67] *riportáre*
- [68] *vittória*
- [69] *Duilio*
- [70] *guerra*
- [71] *Lutázio*
- [72] *guadagnare*
- [73] *altro*
- [74] *último*
- [75] *termináre*
- [76] *vicino*
- [77] *ísola*
- [78] *Egáte*
- [79] *pace*
- [80] *conclúso*
- [81] *condizione*
- [82] *abbandonáre*
- [83] *situáto*
- [84] *pagáre*
- [85] *annualménte*
- [86] *talénto*
- [87] *venti*
- [88] *di séguito*
- [89] *succédere*
- [90] *Cristo*
- [91] *témpio*
- [92] *Giáno*
- [93] *chiúso*
- [94] *raraménte*

- [95] *scopiáre*
- [96] *presto*
- [97] *apérto*
- [98] *Líguri*
- [99] *vinto*
- [100] *guerreggiáre*
- [101] *Illírici*
- [102] *regína*
- [103] *termináre*
- [104] *tre anni*
- [105] *avveníre*
- [106] *incírca*
- [107] *tempo*
- [108] *terribile*
- [109] *incursióne*
- [110] *Galli*
- [111] *Insúbri*
- [112] *Boj*
- [113] *prima*
- [114] *mandáre*
- [115] *transalpíno*
- [116] *attaccáre*
- [117] *a cagióne*
- [118] *terra*
- [119] *tolto*
- [120] *Sénoni*
- [121] *distribuíre*
- [122] *Flaminio*
- [123] *tribuno*
- [124] *pópolo*
- [125] *legge Agrária*
- [126] *fatto*
- [127] *parécchie volte*
- [128] *malmenato*
- [129] *affátto*
- [130] *soggiogato*
- [131] *Virdumáro*
- [132] *ucciso*
- [133] *Marcéllo*
- [134] *cónsole*
- [135] *Rómolo*
- [136] *consacráre*
- [137] *Opíma spógliá*
- [138] *Gióve Ferétrio*
- [139] *mandáre*
- [140] *imménsa quantità*
- [141] *grano*
- [142] *prezzo*
- [143] *ricévere*
- [144] *termináto*

- [145] *seguíre*
[146] *secóndo*
[147] *fine*
[148] *precedénte*
[149] *alla verità*
[150] *duráre*
[151] *cotánto*
[152] *tanto*
[153] *più*
[154] *terribile*
[155] *orréndo*
[156] *macéllo*
[157] *al dire di Floro*
[158] *paragonáre*
[159] *pérdita*
[160] *da ambe le parti*
[161] *nazione*
[162] *sortíre*
[163] *vittorióso*
[164] *parére*
[165] *più presto*
[166] *vinto*
[167] *stesso*
[168] *ambizióne*
[169] *impaziénza*
[170] *sotto*
[171] *servitù*
[172] *incéndio*
[173] *Anníbale*
[174] *Amílcare*
[175] *generále*
[176] *Cartaginési*
[177] *antecedénte*
[178] *guerra*
[179] *accettáto*
[180] *condizióne*
[181] *di mal animo*
[182] *affáre*
[183] *stabilíto*
[184] *mandáto*
[185] *Spagna*
[186] *condurre seco*
[187] *avére allóra nove anni*
[188] *primieraménte*
[189] *presentáto*
[190] *altáre*
[191] *fatto*
[192] *giuráre*
[193] *mai*
[194] *amíco*

- [195] *ucciso*
[196] *nesso*
[197] *posto*
[198] *mandár a cercáre*
[199] *succédere*
[200] *in età di venti sette anni*
[201] *súbito che*
[202] *fatto*
[203] *conquistáre*
[204] *fiúme Ibéro*
[205] *investíre*
[206] *città*
[207] *Sagúnto*
[208] *forza*
[209] *préndere*
[210] *assédio*
[211] *mese*
[212] *Saguntíni*
[213] *indárno*
[214] *aspettáto*
[215] *assisténza*
[216] *períre tutti*
[217] *parte*
[218] *nemíco*
[219] *spada*
[220] *parte*
[221] *mano*
[222] *principiáre*
[223] *duráre*
[224] *venúta*
[225] *cónsole*
[226] *sconfitto*
[227] *Cornélio*
[228] *Ticíno*
[229] *Semprónio*
[230] *ricévere*
[231] *rotta*
[232] *seguénte*
[233] *Trasiméne*
[234] *lago*
[235] *nell' istéssó témpo*
[236] *Fábio Mássimo*
[237] *dittatóre*
[238] *pópolo*
[239] *rimettere*
[240] *modo*
[241] *affáre*
[242] *fatále*
[243] *colpo*
[244] *cagionáto*

[245] *temerità*
[246] *cónsole*
[247] *Terénzio Varróne*
[248] *quaránta mila*
[249] *ucciso*
[250] *battáglia*
[251] *con tutto ciò*
[252] *corággio*
[253] *abbattuto*
[254] *rotta*
[255] *così che*
[256] *riscattáre*
[257] *preso*
[258] *prigioniero*
[259] *cónsole*
[260] *Marcéllò*
[261] *assediáre*
[262] *Siracúsa*
[263] *dichiaráto*
[264] *maravigliosaménte*
[265] *difeso*
[266] *ingégno*
[267] *Archímède*
[268] *eccellénte*
[269] *astrónomo*
[270] *famóso*
[271] *invenzióne*
[272] *militáre*
[273] *máccchina*
[274] *preso*
[275] *alla fine*
[276] *molto*
[277] *difficoltà*
[278] *asséδιο*
[279] *dire*
[280] *fisso*
[281] *stúdio*
[282] *badáre*
[283] *confusióne*
[284] *strépito*
[285] *armáta*
[286] *avventársi*
[287] *città*
[288] *ucciso*
[289] *soldáto*
[290] *afflító*
[291] *morte*
[292] *dato*
[293] *precíso*
[294] *órdine*

[295] *génite*
[296] *salváre*
[297] *vita*
[298] *nell' istésso tempo*
[299] *Lavinio*
[300] *pretóre*
[301] *fermáre*
[302] *Filippo*
[303] *Macedónia*
[304] *alleánza*
[305] *stava per*
[306] *veníre*
[307] *forzáre*
[308] *abbruciáre*
[309] *flotta*
[310] *ritirársi*
[311] *fratéllo*
[312] *Scipióne*
[313] *fin allóra*
[314] *impedito*
[315] *passággio*
[316] *fare*
[317] *azioni valorose*
[318] *armáta*
[319] *distrútta*
[320] *elétto*
[321] *voto*
[322] *soldáto*
[323] *sostenére*
[324] *vacillánte*
[325] *causa*
[326] *condóttá*
[327] *giórno*
[328] *notte*
[329] *campo*
[330] *nemíco*
[331] *preso*
[332] *assálto*
[333] *trenta sette mila*
[334] *uómo*
[335] *uccíso*
[336] *stesso*
[337] *Táranto*
[338] *eccettuáto*
[339] *cittadella*
[340] *assediáto*
[341] *marciáre*
[342] *trarre*
[343] *repentíno*
[344] *tempésta*

[345] *sollevársi*
[346] *lo costrínse d'allontanarsi*
[347] *muro*
[348] *vista*
[349] *reso*
[350] *grande*
[351] *avvelenársi*
[352] *senatóre*
[353] *decapítato*
[354] *priváto*
[355] *libertà*
[356] *figlio*
[357] *ammazzáto*
[358] *Spagna*
[359] *nomináto*
[360] *pariménte*
[361] *morte*
[362] *padre*
[363] *zio*
[364] *mandáto*
[365] *non avéndo che 24 anni*
[366] *fatto*
[367] *cosa*
[368] *vinto*
[369] *Giscóne*
[370] *Magóne*
[371] *scacciáre*
[372] *veníre*
[373] *passáre*
[374] *fare*
[375] *alleánza*
[376] *Sifáce*
[377] *Masiliáni*
[378] *Masasuliáni*
[379] *succédere*
[380] *terzo*
[381] *morte*
[382] *Marcéllò*
[383] *fortunáto*
[384] *molto*
[385] *battáglia*
[386] *alla fine*
[387] *tiráto*
[388] *imboscata*
[389] *segunte*
[390] *tagliáto a pezzi*
[391] *armáta*
[392] *prima che*
[393] *unírsi*
[394] *fratéllo*

[395] *cónsole*
[396] *Claudio Neróne*
[397] *Lívio Salinatóre*
[398] *allóra*
[399] *oppósto*
[400] *Lívio*
[401] *accampáto*
[402] *Gállia Cisalpína*
[403] *contro*
[404] *marciáre*
[405] *attravérso*
[406] *segretaménte*
[407] *giórno*
[408] *veníre*
[409] *campo*
[410] *colléga*
[411] *parte*
[412] *armáta*
[413] *vinto*
[414] *nemíco*
[415] *tornáre*
[416] *accórgersi*
[417] *andáto*
[418] *dire*
[419] *nemíco*
[420] *uccíso*
[421] *battáglia*
[422] *preso*
[423] *prigioniéro*
[424] *testa*
[425] *gettáta*
[426] *la guárdia avanzáta*
[427] *risólvere*
[428] *portáre*
[429] *guerra*
[430] *trarre*
[431] *alla prima*
[432] *consideráto*
[433] *temerário*
[434] *diségno*
[435] *danáro*
[436] *gente*
[437] *govérno*
[438] *perciò*
[439] *leváre*
[440] *voluntário*
[441] *pigliar ad imprestito*
[442] *andáre*
[443] *Sicília*
[444] *di là*

[445] *quando*
[446] *simulácro*
[447] *madre Idéa*
[448] *portáto*
[449] *Pessínno*
[450] *Frígia*
[451] *secóndo*
[452] *consíglío*
[453] *orácolo*
[454] *impiegáto*
[455] *contro*
[456] *Cartaginési*
[457] *proméssó*
[458] *Sofonísba*
[459] *dato*
[460] *Sifáce*
[461] *innamoráto*
[462] *gióvane*
[463] *devastáre*
[464] *paése*
[465] *assénza*
[466] *padre*
[467] *consórte*
[468] *distrárre*
[469] *alleánza*
[470] *tratto*
[471] *irritáto*
[472] *dedicarsi*
[473] *affátto*
[474] *interésse*
[475] *utile*
[476] *debelláre*
[477] *dopo*
[478] *sconfítta*
[479] *trovársi*
[480] *obbligáto*
[481] *richiamáre*
[482] *difesa*
[483] *vano*
[484] *trattativa*
[485] *pace*
[486] *vinto*
[487] *termináto*
[488] *guerra*
[489] *duráto*
[490] *Púnico*
[491] *seguíto*
[492] *Macédonico*
[493] *contro*
[494] *precedénte*

[495] *ingiúria*
[496] *come anche*
[497] *fastídio*
[498] *confederáto*
[499] *specialménte*
[500] *molestáre*
[501] *volgersi*
[502] *alla fine*
[503] *Tito Quínzio Flamínio*
[504] *termináre*
[505] *principiáre*
[506] *col vincere*
[507] *Cinoscefále*
[508] *Tesságliá*
[509] *seguíre*
[510] *Antíoco*
[511] *ricuperáto*
[512] *conquistato*
[513] *Toloméo Epífane*
[514] *principiáre*
[515] *formidábile*
[516] *contro*
[517] *infiammáre*
[518] *paúra*
[519] *nemíco*
[520] *fuggíto*
[521] *ambasciadóre*
[522] *Etoliáni*
[523] *contrário*
[524] *alleánza*
[525] *contribuíre*
[526] *poco*
[527] *perciò*
[528] *fatto una pace finta*
[529] *Toloméo*
[530] *dare*
[531] *matrimónio*
[532] *concédere*
[533] *Celo Síria*
[534] *Giudéa*
[535] *dote*
[536] *impréndere guerra*
[537] *duráre*
[538] *Cornélio Scipióne*
[539] *cónsole*
[540] *passáre*
[541] *l'Africáno*
[542] *luogotenénate*
[543] *ajúto*
[544] *sopra tutto*

[545] *consiglio*
[546] *vincere*
[547] *dire*
[548] *soldati d'infantería*
[549] *ucciso*
[550] *battaglia*
[551] *cavalleria*
[552] *concesso a*
[553] *con questo patto*
[554] *fra*
[555] *ritirarsi*
[556] *da tutto il paese*
[557] *di qua dal*
[558] *monte Tauro*
[559] *vinto*
[560] *debellato*
[561] *soggiogato*
[562] *console Gneo Manlio*
[563] *Olimpiade*
[564] *morire*
[565] *famoso*
[566] *Filopemeno*
[567] *accusato*
[568] *d'aver ricevuto*
[569] *danaro*
[570] *accordare*
[571] *ritirarsi*
[572] *Liturno*
[573] *morire*
[574] *istorico*
[575] *d'accordo*
[576] *cosa*
[577] *richiesto*
[578] *ambasciadore*
[579] *accio*
[580] *messo*
[581] *morte*
[582] *avvelenarsi*
[583] *incirca*
[584] *stesso tempo*
[585] *Achei*
[586] *preso*
[587] *Messenj*
[588] *ucciso*
[589] *costrutto*
[590] *sommettersi*
[591] *rinunziato*
[592] *alleanza*
[593] *sbattuto*
[594] *piuttosto*

[595] *debelláto*
[596] *precedénte*
[597] *affaccendáto*
[598] *fare*
[599] *preparatívo*
[600] *altro*
[601] *cosa*
[602] *matúro*
[603] *abbastánza*
[604] *a questo effetto*
[605] *gli successe*
[606] *Perséo*
[607] *continuáre*
[608] *preparatívo*
[609] *contro*
[610] *termináto*
[611] *princípio*
[612] *rovína*
[613] *regno*
[614] *ancóra*
[615] *impiegáto*
[616] *Páolo Emílio*
[617] *battáglia*
[618] *nella quále*
[619] *uómo*
[620] *fatto*
[621] *prigioniéro*
[622] *méttere*
[623] *termine*
[624] *Macedonico*
[625] *império*
[626] *undécimo*
[627] *Génzio*
[628] *Illírj*
[629] *trascinato*
[630] *alleánza*
[631] *vinto*
[632] *Amício*
[633] *pretóre*
[634] *sconfitta*
[635] *ribellársi*
[636] *soggiogáto*
[637] *ridótto*
[638] *forma*
[639] *província*
[640] *accendersi*
[641] *Achei*
[642] *demolíto*
[643] *mura*
[644] *Lacedemónia*

- [645] *leváre via*
[646] *antíco*
[647] *legge*
[648] *obbligáre*
[649] *unírsi*
[650] *lamentársi*
[651] *mandáre*
[652] *contro*
[653] *sconfitto*
[654] *battágliá*
[655] *Termópilē*
[656] *Focíde*
[657] *poco dopo*
[658] *affátto*
[659] *L. Númmio*
[660] *Corínti*
[661] *metrópoli*
[662] *nazióne*
[663] *bruciáto*
[664] *preso*
[665] *distrútto*
[666] *cagióne*
[667] *disputa*
[668] *tra*
[669] *rispétto a*
[670] *território*
[671] *controvérsia*
[672] *referito*
[673] *abbandonáre*
[674] *paése*
[675] *dispúta*
[676] *danáro*
[677] *anticipataménte*
[678] *risólvere*
[679] *intieraménte*
[680] *spianáre*
[681] *a diritto o a torto*
[682] *sopra tutto*
[683] *istigazióne*
[684] *Marco Catóne censóre*
[685] *dare*
[686] *opinióne*
[687] *discussióne*
[688] *senáto*
[689] *solére*
[690] *per conclusione*
[691] *aggiúngere*
[692] *bisógna*
[693] *distrútto*
[694] *perciò*

[695]	<i>assediáto</i>
[696]	<i>Manílio</i>
[697]	<i>Censoríno</i>
[698]	<i>arréndersi</i>
[699]	<i>comandáto</i>
[700]	<i>demolíre</i>
[701]	<i>stabilírsi</i>
[702]	<i>miglia</i>
[703]	<i>di distánza</i>
[704]	<i>mare</i>
[705]	<i>infiammáto</i>
[706]	<i>collera</i>
[707]	<i>disperazióne</i>
[708]	<i>sostenérsi</i>
[709]	<i>oltre</i>
[710]	<i>forza</i>
[711]	<i>infíno</i>
[712]	<i>stesso</i>
[713]	<i>Corínto</i>
[714]	<i>preso</i>
[715]	<i>P. Cornélio Scipióne</i>
[716]	<i>procónsole</i>
[717]	<i>Páolo Emílio</i>
[718]	<i>adottáto</i>
[719]	<i>principío</i>
[720]	<i>Numídi</i>
[721]	<i>moríre</i>
[722]	<i>età</i>
[723]	<i>lasciáto</i>
[724]	<i>continuáto</i>
[725]	<i>nell'alleanza</i>

CHAP. VI.

(*Of the World, 3908—Of Rome, 608.*)

[1]About the same time the [2]Lusitanians in [3]Spain [4]beat the Romans most [5]shamefully [6]under the [7]conduct of [8]Viriathus; who from a [9]hunter [10]became a [11]highwayman; and from a highwayman, a general, and [12]defeated the Roman [13]armies [14]several times. But that [15]overthrow was most [16]memorable of all [17]others, in which, in the year 608, having [18]routed the [19]forces of [20]Vetilius the [21]prætor, [22]he took him prisoner, and [23]put him [24]to death, according to [25]Appian. Nor was he the [26]only one that was [27]conquered by Viriathus, but several others [28]underwent the same [29]fate. The first that was [30]successful [31]against him was [32]C. Lælius the prætor, in the year 609. After which the proconsul [33]Quintius Fabius Maximus [34]defeated him. In the year 614, [35]Q. Servilius Cæpio [36]basely [37]procured him to be [38]assassinated by some of his own [39]officers, whom he had [40]bribed [41]for that purpose, to the great [42]dishonour of the Roman [43]name.

[126]

After this a much more [44]dangerous war [45]broke out in Celtiberia. The Numantini having [46]received the [47]Segidenses their [48]allies, that had [49]escaped the [50]hands of the Romans, were [51]commanded by Metellus the proconsul, [52]to deliver up the [53]refugees, and [54]lay down their [55]arms, but they [56]refused both: and [57]though they were so much [58]inferior to the Romans, in [59]number and [60]strength, they [61]made a [62]gallant [63]resistance for some [64]years.

The [65]army of [66]M. Popilius the proconsul, was [67]cut off by them, and the year [68]following, [69]thirty [70]thousand Romans, under the consul Mancinus, were [71]routed by four thousand of the Numantini; which [72]disgrace was [73]followed by a most [74]shameful [75]peace; but the senate [76]refused to [77]ratify it; [78]wherefore Mancinus was [79]delivered up into their hands, but the Numantini would not [80]receive him. [81]At last they were [82]vanquished in the [83]field by Scipio, who had [84]destroyed Carthage; and being [85]shut up within their own [86]walls, were [87]reduced to [88]so desperate a condition, that they all [89]laid violent hands upon themselves; and Numantia was [90]levelled with the ground, in the ninth year after their [91]revolt from the Romans, and from the [92]foundation of the city 621. [127]

[93]Whilst the Romans were [94]still at war with the [95]Achæans and Carthaginians, Macedon was [96]conquered a third time. [97]Andriscus, a [98]man of [99]mean birth, who [100]pretended to be [101]Philip the son of [102]Perseus, had [103]possessed himself of it. He was conquered by [104]Q. Cæcilius Metellus, with the [105]slaughter of 25,000 [106]of his men. Metellus had [107]from thence [108]the surname of [109]Macedonicus.

At the time that the Romans were [110]engaged in the [111]Numantine war, there was a [112]rising of the [113]slaves in Sicily. A [114]Syrian, [115]by name Eunus, [116]pretending to a [117]divine [118]inspiration, [119]called the slaves to [120]arms and [121]liberty, [122]as it were by the [123]order of the [124]gods; and having [125]raised a [126]vast [127]army, [128]consisting of no less than 70,000 men, he [129]vanquished four Roman prætors, and was [130]at last [131]routed himself, by P. Rupilius the consul, in the year of the city 622.

Attalus, son of [132]Eumenes, king of [133]Phrygia, when his [134]uncle Attalus was [135]dead (who after Eumenes' death had [136]managed the [137]kingdom as his [138]guardian), [139]reigned five years, and dying about the year of the city 621, made the Roman people his [140]heir: which [141]Aristonicus, a son of Eumenes by one of his [142]mistresses, [143]taking amiss, he [144]seized upon Asia, and [145]cut off the army of Crassus the prætor. Afterwards he was [146]vanquished by the consul Peperna, and an [147]end was put to the war the year [148]following, 625, by M. Aquilius the consul. This was a [149]melancholy year for the [150]death of Scipio Africanus, who was [151]found dead in his [152]bed, not without the [153]suspicion of having been [154]poisoned by his [155]wife. [128]

The year in which Attalus [156]made the Roman people his [157]heir, there was a [158]formidable [159]sedition at Rome. For T. Gracchus, [160]tribune of the [161]people, having made the [162]Agrarian law, that [163]nobody should [164]possess above 500 [165]acres of [166]land, and [167]proposing to have the [168]money of king Attalus [169]divided amongst the people, and [170]likewise [171]suing for the [172]tribuneship against the year following, the senators being very much [173]disturbed at the [174]matter, he was, by the [175]order of P. Corn. Nasica, [176]slain in the [177]Capitol, [178]whither he had [179]fled for [180]refuge.

After the death of Tiberius, his [181]brother Caius [182]pursuing the same [183]design, was [184]taken off by Opimius, the consul, and [185]together with him, Fulvius Flaccus, who had been consul. [129]

In the year of the city 629, the Romans first made war upon the [186]Gauls [187]beyond the Alps. They [188]began with the Sali, and [189]Allobroges, whom Fulvius Flaccus [190]subdued. In the year 633, Fabius the consul made an end of the war with the Allobroges. He [191]conquered Bituitus, king of the Arverni, in [192]battle. The king himself [193]coming to Rome to [194]satisfy the senate, was [195]confined at Alba. Then Gallia Narbonensis was made a [196]province, and a [197]colony [198]sent to Narbon in the year 636.

The Romans were after this [199]almost [200]perpetually at war with the Gauls, by whom they were [201]oftentimes [202]soundly beaten; but, above all others, the Cimbri and Teutones were [203]terrible to them. They [204]marching for Italy, and not [205]being able to [206]prevail with the senate for [207]room to [208]settle in, they [209]routed M. Silanus the consul; the year following Scaurus was [210]defeated by the Cimbri, and L. Cassius by the Helvetii Tigurini the year after that. But the [211]overthrow of Q. Cæpio was more [212]memorable than all the [213]rest. He had [214]plundered [215]Tholouse in the [216]country of the Tectosagæ, and had [217]carried off an hundred thousand [218]pounds of [219]gold, and fifteen hundred thousand pounds of [220]silver. This was done in the year of the city 648. But the following, he, with C. Manilius, [221]paid for this [130]

[222]sacrilege, with the [223]utter, [224]destruction of the Roman army. It is certain there were [225]slain in this [226]battle of the Romans and their [227]allies, [228]fourscore thousand, and of [229]servants that [230]followed the [231]camp [232]threescore thousand.

At length the Teutones and the [233]Ambrones were almost all [234]destroyed, two hundred thousand being slain, and seventy thousand [235]taken [236]prisoners, by C. Marius the consul, in the year 652; and the following year, the same Marius, [237]in conjunction with Catulus, defeated the Cimbri, that were [238]making their way through [239]Noricum, [240]slew an hundred and twenty thousand, and took sixty thousand prisoners.

With so many [241]victories did Marius [242]consummate the [243]glory he had [244]got in the war with Jugurtha. For in the year of the city 643, a war was [245]undertaken against Jugurtha, king of Numidia, because he had [246]deprived his [247]cousins Hiempsal and Adherbal, the sons of Micipsa, and [248]grandsons of Masanissa, of their [249]lives and [250]kingdom. He [251]prevailed against the Romans for some years, more by his gold than by his arms; but was at last [252]brought low by Metellus the consul, and [253]finally [254]entirely [255]subdued by Marius, and [256]delivered up by Bocchus, king of Mauritania, to whom he had [257]fled for refuge; after which he was [258]carried to Rome, to [259]grace the [260]triumph of Marius, and [261]put to death in [262]prison. [131]

This [263]happy [264]progress of the [265]empire [266]abroad, was [267]interrupted by [268]frequent and [269]shameful [270]disorders at [271]home, which were [272]occasioned by the tribunes. Saturninus having [273]had the Agrarian law [274]passed, to [275]divide among the people the land which Marius had got, by [276]driving the Cimbri out of Gaul, [277]banished Metellus Numidicus, who [278]opposed him; but at last was [279]slain himself by Marius, then consul for the sixth time, in the year 654; and the following year Metellus was [280]recalled from [281]banishment.

After Saturninus, Livius Drusus, tribune of the people, but [282]favouring the senate, being [283]desirous to [284]restore them to their [285]ancient [286]splendor, and to [287]put the [288]execution of their laws into their [289]hands, which C. Gracchus had [290]divided [291]between them and the [292]knights, he passed the same Agrarian laws, and put the [293]allies in [294]hopes of the [295]freedom of the city; which [296]being not able to [297]bring about, he [298]fell under an universal [299]odium, and was [300]stabbed, nobody [301]knew how, in the year 663.

After this, the Romans were [302]engaged in two most [303]difficult and terrible wars, almost at the same time; one in Italy, and the other without. That was [304]called the [305]Social or [306]Marsic war, because the Marsi had been the first [307]beginners of it; for all the [308]Latins, and most of the people of Italy, being [309]disgusted, that they who were [310]sharers in all the [311]hardships and [312]dangers of the war, should be [313]excluded from the [314]honours and [315]dignities of the [316]state; and being [317]frustrated in the hopes of [318]obtaining the [319]freedom of the city by Drusus, [320]endeavoured to [321]compass that by [322]force of arms, which they could not obtain [323]by fair means. They first [324]attempted in the Latin [325]Feriæ, to [326]assassinate both the consuls, Philip and Cæsar; but the [327]matter being [328]discovered, they [329]openly [330]revolted, [331]massacred Q. Servilius the proconsul, [332]Fonteius and all the Romans at [333]Asculum. After this the war was [334]carried on with [335]various [336]success. Cn. [337]Pompey Strabo, father of Pompey the [338]Great, [339]distinguished himself upon this [340]occasion. He [341]forced the Vestini and Peligni to [342]submission, and [343]triumphed upon that [344]account. [345]Likewise L. Sylla Cæsar, the consul's [346]lieutenant, did, by his great successes against the enemy, [347]obtain the [348]consulship, in which he [349]made an end of the war. [132]

Soon after [350]broke out a war between the Romans and [351]Mithridates, who having [352]taken off Ariarthes, king of Cappadocia, his [353]sister's [354]husband, together with his son of the same [355]name, had [356]seized upon the kingdom; but being forced to [357]forego what he had [358]unjustly got, Ariobarzanes was [359]nominated king of Cappadocia by the senate, but forced out of his [360]dominions by Mithridates, and [361]restored by Sylla. After this he was once more [362]driven out of Cappadocia by Mithridates, [363]as was likewise Nicomedes out of Bithynia. But both [364]recovered their dominions again by a [365]decree of the senate; which Mithridates being [366]offended at, he [367]invaded Cappadocia and Bithynia, [368]routed the Roman armies, [369]massacred all the Italians, [370]throughout Asia in one day; and [371]reduced Macedon, [372]Thrace, [373]Greece, and [374]Athens. The consul Sylla [375]marching against him, [376]took [133]

Athens, and having ^[377]defeated his generals, forced him to a peace upon the ^[378]conditions of his ^[379]quitting Asia, Bithynia, and Cappadocia.

FOOTNOTES

- [1] *incirca*
- [2] *Lusitáni*
- [3] *Spagna*
- [4] *báttere*
- [5] *ignominiosaménte*
- [6] *sotto*
- [7] *condótta*
- [8] *Viriato*
- [9] *cacciatóre*
- [10] *diventáre*
- [11] *ladro di strada*
- [12] *sconfíggere*
- [13] *armáta*
- [14] *più volte*
- [15] *sconfítta*
- [16] *memorábile*
- [17] *altro*
- [18] *rotto*
- [19] *truppa*
- [20] *Vetílio*
- [21] *pretóre*
- [22] *fare*
- [23] *méttere*
- [24] *morte*
- [25] *Appiáno*
- [26] *solo*
- [27] *vinto*
- [28] *soffrírre*
- [29] *fato*
- [30] *fortunáto*
- [31] *contro*
- [32] *C. Lelio*
- [33] *Quinto Fabio Mássimo*
- [34] *sconfíggere*
- [35] *Q. Servílio Cepióne*
- [36] *vilménte*
- [37] *fare*
- [38] *assassináre*
- [39] *uffiziále*
- [40] *corrótto*
- [41] *a questo effétto*
- [42] *disonóre*
- [43] *nome*
- [44] *pericolóso*
- [45] *accendérsi*
- [46] *ricevúto*

- [47] *Segidénsi*
- [48] *alleáto*
- [49] *scampáto*
- [50] *mano*
- [51] *comandáto*
- [52] *consegnáre*
- [53] *rifuggiáto*
- [54] *cédere*
- [55] *arma*
- [56] *ricusáre*
- [57] *benchè*
- [58] *inferióre*
- [59] *número*
- [60] *forza*
- [61] *fare*
- [62] *valente*
- [63] *resisténza*
- [64] *anno*
- [65] *armáta*
- [66] *M. Popílio*
- [67] *tagliata fuori*
- [68] *seguénte*
- [69] *trenta*
- [70] *mila*
- [71] *sconfitto*
- [72] *disastro*
- [73] *seguíto*
- [74] *vergognóso*
- [75] *pace*
- [76] *ricusáre*
- [77] *ratificáre*
- [78] *perciò*
- [79] *consegnáto*
- [80] *ricévere*
- [81] *alla fine*
- [82] *vinto*
- [83] *battáglia campále*
- [84] *distrútto*
- [85] *rinchiúso*
- [86] *muro*
- [87] *ridótto*
- [88] *estréma disperazióne*
- [89] *uccidérsi*
- [90] *spianáto*
- [91] *sollevazióne*
- [92] *fondazióne*
- [93] *mentre*
- [94] *ancóra*
- [95] *Achei*
- [96] *conquistáto*

- [97] *Andrísco*
[98] *uómo*
[99] *bassa nascita*
[100] *preténdere*
[101] *Filippo*
[102] *Perséo*
[103] *impadroníto*
[104] *Q. Cecílio Metéllo*
[105] *macéllo*
[106] *de' suoi*
[107] *quindi*
[108] *cognóme*
[109] *Macedónico*
[110] *impegnáto*
[111] *Numantíno*
[112] *ribellíone*
[113] *schíavo*
[114] *Sirio*
[115] *che si chiamáva Euno*
[116] *fingeré*
[117] *divíno*
[118] *ispirazióne*
[119] *invitáre*
[120] *arma*
[121] *libertà*
[122] *come se fosse*
[123] *órdine*
[124] *nume*
[125] *leváto*
[126] *poderóso*
[127] *armáta*
[128] *compósto*
[129] *vincere*
[130] *alla fine*
[131] *sconfitto*
[132] *Euméne*
[133] *Frígia*
[134] *zio*
[135] *morto*
[136] *governáto*
[137] *regno*
[138] *curatóre*
[139] *regnáre*
[140] *erede*
[141] *Aristónico*
[142] *cortigiana*
[143] *avendo a male*
[144] *impadronírsi*
[145] *tagliáre a pezzi*
[146] *vinto*

- [147] *termináto*
- [148] *seguénte*
- [149] *malincónico*
- [150] *morte*
- [151] *trováto*
- [152] *letto*
- [153] *sospétto*
- [154] *avvelenáto*
- [155] *moglie*
- [156] *fare*
- [157] *erede*
- [158] *formidabile*
- [159] *sedizióne*
- [160] *tribúno*
- [161] *popolo*
- [162] *legge Agrária*
- [163] *nissúno*
- [164] *possédere*
- [165] *júgero*
- [166] *terra*
- [167] *propórre*
- [168] *danáro*
- [169] *spartíre*
- [170] *pariménte*
- [171] *sollecitáre*
- [172] *tribunáto*
- [173] *inquietáto*
- [174] *cosa*
- [175] *órdine*
- [176] *uccíso*
- [177] *Campidóglio*
- [178] *dove*
- [179] *fuggíto*
- [180] *salvézza*
- [181] *fratéllo*
- [182] *proseguíre*
- [183] *diségno*
- [184] *uccíso*
- [185] *insiéme*
- [186] *Galli*
- [187] *di là dall'Alpi*
- [188] *principiáre*
- [189] *Allobrógi*
- [190] *soggiogáre*
- [191] *víncere*
- [192] *battágliá*
- [193] *veníre*
- [194] *soddisfáre*
- [195] *rilegáto*
- [196] *província*

[197] *colónia*
[198] *mandáto*
[199] *quasi*
[200] *perpetuamente*
[201] *spesso*
[202] *fieramente percosso*
[203] *terribile*
[204] *marciáre*
[205] *potére*
[206] *ottenére*
[207] *sito*
[208] *stabilírsi*
[209] *méttere in rotta*
[210] *sconfitto*
[211] *rotta*
[212] *memorábile*
[213] *altro*
[214] *saccheggiáre*
[215] *Tolósa*
[216] *paése*
[217] *portáre via*
[218] *libbra*
[219] *oro*
[220] *argénto*
[221] *pagáre*
[222] *sacrilégio*
[223] *totále*
[224] *distruzióne*
[225] *ucciso*
[226] *battáglia*
[227] *alleáto*
[228] *ottánta*
[229] *servitóre*
[230] *seguíre*
[231] *campo*
[232] *sessánta*
[233] *Ambróni*
[234] *distritto*
[235] *fatto*
[236] *prigioniéro*
[237] *unitaménte*
[238] *facéndosi strada tra*
[239] *Nórico*
[240] *uccidere*
[241] *vittória*
[242] *coronare*
[243] *glória*
[244] *acquistáre*
[245] *intraprésó*
[246] *priváto*

[247] *cugíno*
[248] *nipotíno*
[249] *vita*
[250] *regno*
[251] *sostenere*
[252] *abbassáto*
[253] *finalménte*
[254] *affátto*
[255] *soggiogáto*
[256] *consegnato*
[257] *fuggíto per scampo*
[258] *condótto*
[259] *adornáre*
[260] *trióno*
[261] *nesso*
[262] *prigíone*
[263] *felíce*
[264] *progréssso*
[265] *império*
[266] *al di fuóri*
[267] *interrótto*
[268] *frequénte*
[269] *vergognóso*
[270] *disórdine*
[271] *nel paése*
[272] *cagionáto*
[273] *fatto*
[274] *passáre*
[275] *spartíre*
[276] *scacciáre*
[277] *esiliáre*
[278] *oppórre*
[279] *uccíso*
[280] *richiamáto*
[281] *esílio*
[282] *favoreggiáre*
[283] *desideróso*
[284] *restituíre*
[285] *antíco*
[286] *splendóre*
[287] *méttere*
[288] *esecuzíone*
[289] *mano*
[290] *spartíto*
[291] *fra*
[292] *cavaliére*
[293] *alleáto*
[294] *speránza*
[295] *cittadinanza romana*
[296] *non potére*

- [297] *effettuáre*
- [298] *incórrere*
- [299] *ódio*
- [300] *pugnaláto*
- [301] *sapére*
- [302] *impegnáto*
- [303] *faticóso*
- [304] *chiamáto*
- [305] *Sociále*
- [306] *Mársico*
- [307] *autóre*
- [308] *Latíno*
- [309] *disgustáto*
- [310] *dividere*
- [311] *fática*
- [312] *perícólo*
- [313] *esclúso*
- [314] *onóre*
- [315] *dignità*
- [316] *stato*
- [317] *deluso*
- [318] *ottenére*
- [319] *libertà*
- [320] *procuráre*
- [321] *spuntáre*
- [322] *forza*
- [323] *colle buóne*
- [324] *tentáre*
- [325] *Férie*
- [326] *assassináre*
- [327] *cosa*
- [328] *scopérto*
- [329] *apertaménte*
- [330] *rivoltársi*
- [331] *uccídere*
- [332] *Fontéjo*
- [333] *Ascolo*
- [334] *continuáto*
- [335] *vário*
- [336] *succésso*
- [337] *Pompeo Strabóne*
- [338] *magno*
- [339] *distínquersi*
- [340] *occasióne*
- [341] *forzáre*
- [342] *obbediénza*
- [343] *trionfáre*
- [344] *cagióne*
- [345] *pariménte*
- [346] *luogotenénte*

[347]	<i>ottenére</i>
[348]	<i>consoláto</i>
[349]	<i>termináre</i>
[350]	<i>accendérsi</i>
[351]	<i>Mitridáte</i>
[352]	<i>uccíso</i>
[353]	<i>sorélla</i>
[354]	<i>maríto</i>
[355]	<i>nome</i>
[356]	<i>impossessáto</i>
[357]	<i>abbandonáre</i>
[358]	<i>ingiustaménte</i>
[359]	<i>nomináto</i>
[360]	<i>domínio</i>
[361]	<i>ristabilíto</i>
[362]	<i>scacciáto</i>
[363]	<i>come pure lo fu</i>
[364]	<i>ricuperáre</i>
[365]	<i>decréto</i>
[366]	<i>offéso</i>
[367]	<i>invádere</i>
[368]	<i>sconfíggere</i>
[369]	<i>uccídere</i>
[370]	<i>per tutta</i>
[371]	<i>sottoporre</i>
[372]	<i>Trácia</i>
[373]	<i>Grécia</i>
[374]	<i>Aténe</i>
[375]	<i>marciáre</i>
[376]	<i>pigliáre</i>
[377]	<i>sconfíggere</i>
[378]	<i>patto</i>
[379]	<i>abbandonáre</i>

CHAP. VII.

(Of the World, 3966—Of Rome, 666.)

Marius, ^[1]though now ^[2]broken with ^[3]age and years, yet being very ^[4]ambitious of getting ^[5]employed against Mithridates, could not ^[6]bear with patience the ^[7]bestowing that ^[8]province upon Sylla. ^[9]Wherefore he ^[10]prevailed by the ^[11]means of C. Sulpicius, the tribune of the people, to have it ^[12]taken from Sylla, and bestowed upon himself. At which Sylla being ^[13]enraged, ^[14]seized upon the city, and having ^[15]slain Sulpicius, ^[16]obliged Marius to ^[17]fly. In his ^[18]absence, Cinna the consul, making a ^[19]disturbance, was ^[20]driven out of the city, and being ^[21]joined by Marius, Carbo, and Sertorius, ^[22]assaulted Rome; which, having ^[23]taken, ^[24]he put a great many of the Romans ^[25]to the sword. Marius ^[26]died a natural death the year following.

[134]

Sylla having made peace with Mithridates, ^[27]returned into Italy, and ^[28]made an end of the civil war in two years time, by the ^[29]defeat of Carbo, Norbanus, young Marius, and others; and being ^[30]declared ^[31]dictator, ^[32]took off a great many of Marius's party by means of a ^[33]proscription. Q. Sertorius ^[34]retired into Farther Spain, where he ^[35]held out for some years very ^[36]valiantly.

Sylla having in the year 675 [37]laid down the [38]dictatorship, died the year following of the [39]lousy [40]disease, in the sixtieth year of his [41]age. After his death, Lepidus the consul, [42]endeavouring to [43]annul the [44]acts of Sylla, was [45]forced out of the city by his [46]colleague Catulus. And the year following [47]advancing up to the city with an [48]army, he was defeated by the same Catulus and Cn. Pompey, and [49]fled into [50]Sardinia, where he [51]fell ill and died. The same Pompey being [52]sent into Spain against Sertorius, [53]performed no important things; but the latter being [54]treacherously [55]slain by his own people, he [56]easily [57]recovered that province in the year 681. [135]

In the mean time the war with Mithridates [58]broke out again, while Sylla was yet living; and after Sylla's death, Mithridates having [59]entered into an [60]alliance with Sertorius, [61]seized by force of arms upon Bithynia, which Nicomedes at his death in 679, had [62]left to the Roman people. L. Lucullus consul, in 680, [63]went against him, and being very [64]successful both by [65]sea and [66]land, he [67]obliged him to fly, first into [68]Pontus, and soon after to [69]Tigranes in Armenia. Lucullus [70]conquered Pontus, and defeated both the kings who [71]engaged him with an army of two hundred thousand [72]foot and sixty thousand [73]horse, in the year of the city 685. After this, Tigranocerta, the capital of Armenia, and [74]Nisibis, two very great cities, were [75]taken. But this excellent general being [76]forsaken by his men, was [77]obliged to [78]leave the [79]fruit of his [80]toil and [81]victories to Cn. Pompey, in the year 688. He having [82]forced Tigranes to [83]surrender, obliged him to be [84]satisfied with Armenia; and whilst he [85]pursued Mithridates, he [86]added the [87]Iberians and [88]Albanians to the Roman empire, in the year 689. [89]Finally, Mithridates, in the year 691, being [90]every where [91]beaten, [92]thought of [93]flying into [94]Gaul, but being [95]discouraged by the [96]revolt of his son [97]Pharnaces and the army, he [98]slew himself. [136]

Whilst the war with Mithridates was [99]warmly [100]carried on, there [101]broke out another with the [102]slaves, in the year of the city 681. One [103]Spartacus Ænomanus, and [104]Crixus, [105]gladiators, having [106]broken up a [107]school of gladiators at Capua, [108]belonging to Lentulus, and [109]assembled an army of [110]desperadoes, [111]routed the Roman armies several times, but at last were [112]vanquished by Crassus the prætor, and Pompey, in the year 685.

Pompey [113]likewise [114]subdued the [115]pirates, who, at the [116]instigation of Mithridates, [117]infested the seas, having an [118]extraordinary [119]commission [120]for that purpose by the [121]Gabinian law. Whilst Pompey was [122]enlarging the Roman empire [123]abroad, the [124]head of the empire was in no small [125]danger from a [126]conspiracy which [127]Cataline, [128]Lentulus the prætor, [129]Cethegus, and other senators, had [130]entered into, to [131]murder the consul [132]Cicero, and to [133]burn and [134]plunder the city. But their [135]designs were [136]prevented by the [137]vigilance of the consul. Catiline being [138]forced out of the city, [139]repared to the army, which some of his [140]accomplices had [141]collected. Lentulus, and the rest of the [142]ringleaders of the [143]plot were put to death. This [144]happened in the year 691, and the following year Cataline was [145]defeated by [146]Petreius [147]Antony the proconsul's [148]lieutenant, and [149]slain in the [150]fight. [137]

The whole [151]world being now almost [152]subdued, the Roman empire was [153]arrived to that [154]grandeur, that it could [155]hardly [156]extend itself farther. No [157]outward [158]force was [159]sufficient to [160]ruin it; it [161]fell by its own [162]power, which was [163]occasioned by the [164]ambition of the [165]leading men, and the civil [166]contests that [167]arose from thence.

C. Cæsar, after the time of his [168]prætorship in the city was [169]expired, [170]obtained the province of Lusitania; and by the great feats he [171]performed there, [172]deserved well the honor of a [173]triumph; but [174]postponed the [175]hopes of that to the [176]consular [177]dignity; for which, [178]while he made all [179]possible [180]interest, Pompey [181]united with Cæsar and Crassus, while Lucullus and some others of the [182]grandees, [183]opposing his [184]acts, which he [185]desired might be [186]ratified by the senate. Thus Cæsar [187]gained the [188]consulship in the year 695, in which he [189]established the acts of Pompey by the senate, and [190]divided the [191]public [192]lands in Campania amongst the [193]citizens. He [194]married his daughter Julia to Pompey, and [195]took Calphurnia, the daughter of [196]Piso [197]as a wife. Having by these [198]arts, and a [199]boundless [200]generosity, [201]gained the [202]favor of all [203]ranks and [204]degrees of men, he [205]procured the province of Gaul, which he [206]governed for nine years; during which time he [207]reduced all Gaul, that is [208]comprehended within the [209]Pyrenean mountains, the [138]

[210]Alps, the Rhone, and the [211]Rhine, in the [212]form of a province, and [213]imposed a [214]yearly [215]tribute upon it. He was the first of all the Romans that [216]attacked the [217]Germans [218]beyond the Rhine. He likewise [219]visited the [220]Britons, where [221]none before him had ever [222]come. In this [223]interval, in the year 698, he [224]entered into an [225]association with Pompey and Crassus; by [226]virtue of which he was to have Gaul [227]continued to him. Pompey was to have [228]Spain, and Crassus Syria, in order to a war against the [229]Parthians; to which he [230]accordingly [231]went in the year 699, and the third year after, [232]perished most [233]miserably, with the greater [234]part of his army; after which the Parthians made an [235]irruption into Syria, but were [236]bravely [237]repulsed by Cassius.

After the death of Crassus, Pompey not being able to [238]endure an [239]equal, nor Cæsar a [240]superior, the civil war broke out. Pompey's [241]party [242]endeavouring to [243]take away from Cæsar both his army and province, as soon as the time of his [244]government should [245]expire; whilst Cæsar's on the other [246]hand were for [247]treating Pompey [248]in like manner. At last in the year 705, in the [249]consulship of C. Claudius Marcellus, and L. Cornelius Lentulus, the senate, by a [250]vote, obliged Cæsar to [251]disband his army by a certain day. Antonius and Cassius, tribunes of the people, [252]interposing their [253]authority in vain, [254]left the town, and [255]repared to Cæsar, who [256]advancing his army towards the city, [257]struck such a [258]consternation into Pompey and the rest, that [259]leaving the city [260]without much ado, and [261]shortly after Italy, they [262]passed over into [263]Greece. Cæsar went to Spain, where he [264]vanquished Petreius and Afranius, and [265]forced their armies to [266]surrender [267]prisoners of war. In his [268]return he [269]took [270]Marseilles, and after that was made dictator, to which [271]office he was [272]chosen four times, and at last had it [273]given him for [274]life. [139]

In the year 706, Pompey being [275]defeated by Cæsar in the [276]fields of [277]Pharsalia, went to [278]Egypt, where he was slain by the [279]order of [280]Ptolemy, in the 59th year of his [281]age. Hither Cæsar [282]likewise [283]came the following year, and after a very [284]dangerous [285]rencounter, which he [286]happily [287]accomplished, [288]delivered the [289]kingdom of Egypt to Cleopatra and her brother. In the year following he vanquished Scipio and Cato, with king Juba, in Africa. Cato [290]laid violent hands upon himself at Utica. The year that [291]followed was [292]remarkable for the [293]correction of the [294]calendar and the year. The same year likewise he [295]conquered Pompey's sons; and the year after was [296]stabbed in the [297]senate house, by a [298]conspiracy of Brutus and Cassius, and some others, in the 56th year of his age. [140]

Besides these [299]convulsions, with which the whole [300]world was [301]shattered, there were some less [302]disturbances [303]happened a little before. [304]Clodius Pulcher being [305]made tribune of the people, [306]banished Cicero, for having [307]condemned the [308]associates of Cataline to death without a [309]trial; which [310]calamity he [311]bore too [312]meanly, and [313]by no means [314]agreeable to the [315]dignity of his past life. But he was [316]recalled the year after by the [317]interposition of Pompey, and Lentulus the consul, and [318]received with the greatest [319]honor. The same Clodius [320]declared [321]Cyprus to [322]belong to the Roman people, and Cato being [323]sent to [324]take possession of it, Ptolemy, king of the [325]island, after first [326]throwing all his [327]money into the sea, [328]prevented his [329]disgrace by a [330]voluntary death. The senate [331]bestowed the [332]prætorship upon Cato at his [333]return, by a [334]vote of the house, without any [335]election; which honor he [336]refused, being [337]desirous to [338]obtain it rather by the [339]free [340]votes of the people. But he was [341]disappointed in his [342]hopes, and Vatinius was [343]preferred to him. [141]

[344]Bribery [345]ruling in [346]all [347]elections, and the [348]candidates making a most [349]dismal [350]confusion, after a long [351]interregnum, Pompey was made consul, without a [352]colleague, a thing [353]wholly new, and never heard of before; in which office he made a [354]severe [355]inquiry into all other [356]misdemeanors, as likewise into the death of Clodius, whom Milo [357]killed the same year, and for which he was [358]banished.

After the death of Cæsar, Antony the consul so [359]inflamed the people by [360]a seditious [361]harangue, that they [362]burnt his [363]body [364]publicly, and [365]threatened to set fire, and [366]pull down the houses of the [367]assassins. Octavius Cæsar, the son of Accia [368]Julius's sister, was his [369]adopted son by [370]will. He being [371]slighted by M. Antony, [372]raised an army of [373]veteran soldiers, and [374]opposed his [375]tyrannical [376]proceedings. Antonius [377]extorted from the people by force the province of Gaul, but his [378]passage there was opposed by D. [142]

Brutus at Modena, where he was [379]besieged by Antony.

In the [380]consulship of [381]Hirtius and Pansa, in the year of the city 711, at the [382]instigation of Cicero Antony was [383]declared [384]enemy, and a war [385]undertaken against him; when Octavius [386]joined in [387]commission with the consuls, with the [388]power of proconsul, being then about the 20th year of his age. There was a [389]dreadful and [390]bloody [391]battle [392]fought near Modena, in which all Cæsar's [393]life-guards were slain; but Antony was routed, and the [394]siege [395]raised, yet both the consuls were killed.

In Macedon, Brutus [396]took off C. Antonius, M. Antony's brother, who was [397]intriguing against him, and [398]got together a [399]formidable army. Upon which the senate [400]resolved by [401]degrees to [402]take down Octavius, [403]for fear of his [404]growing too [405]powerful; which he being [406]apprehensive of, [407]he entered into an [408]association with Antony and Lepidus; and [409]consequently they were all three made [410]commissioners [411]for settling the [412]republic. They having [413]divided the whole [414]empire into three parts, [415]proscribed a great many of the Romans, and amongst the rest M. [416]Tully Cicero, who, whilst he was [417]endeavouring to [418]make his escape into Greece, was killed by Pompilius, a [419]captain, whose [420]cause he had [421]pleaded in a capital [422]action. There was a [423]dreadful [424]havoc made in this [425]proscription. The [426]Epitome of Livy speaks of no less than an hundred and thirty senators; the same year, [427]gave [428]beginning to one of the finest cities of France, [429]Lyons.

[143]

The year following, Octavius and Antony [430]fought a battle with M. Brutus and the [431]principal of the [432]conspirators, near the city of Philippi. The [433]right [434]wings were [435]victorious on both [436]sides, and on both sides the [437]camps were [438]plundered. But Cassius, who was in the wing that was [439]routed, [440]giving up all for lost, [441]slew himself. Brutus, being [442]defeated in another [443]engagement, likewise put an end to his own life, being then thirty-seven years of age, and none of Cæsar's [444]assassins [445]lived above three years after, being all [446]taken off by a [447]violent death, as [448]Suetonius says; some too [449]killed themselves with the same [450]dagger with which they had slain Cæsar.

After the [451]victory, Antony [452]went to Asia, and Octavius to Italy; where he [453]was engaged in a war with L. Antony, the brother of the [454]triumvir, and his [455]wife Fulvia, a [456]woman of a [457]manly [458]spirit. He forced Lucius from the town; after which, being [459]declared an enemy, he [460]besieged him in Perugia, and obliged him to [461]surrender. In the mean time, the Parthians being [462]invited by Labienus, one of Pompey's party, made an [463]irruption into Syria, whom Ventidius, after a very [464]signal [465]overthrow, in which the king was slain, [466]drove out again, and [467]recovered Syria.

[144]

S. Pompey, Cneius's son, having a [468]fleet at his [469]command, [470]infested the seas. Cæsar made with him a peace, which was [471]soon [472]broken. [473]An engagement [474]followed, wherein Pompey was [475]worsted, and [476]forced to [477]fly. He was soon after [478]put to death by [479]order of M. Antony, under whose [480]protection he had put himself. About this time Antony made an [481]attempt upon the Parthians, by whom he was most [482]shamefully [483]beaten. At last Antony being [484]entirely [485]devoted to his Cleopatra, [486]divorced Octavia, Cæsar's sister, and [487]declared war against him, in which he was at last defeated by sea near [488]Actium, a [489]promontory of [490]Epirus. Cæsar had upwards of 400 [491]ships, and Antony about 200, but so [492]prodigiously [493]large, that they [494]looked like [495]castles and cities [496]moving through the sea. The [497]flight of Cleopatra [498]turned the [499]fate of a [500]dubious [501]engagement into the [502]ruin of Antony; he followed her into Egypt, and being [503]besieged in Alexandria, he [504]slew himself, and Cleopatra soon [505]followed his [506]example.

FOOTNOTES

- [1] *benchè*
- [2] *affievolito*
- [3] *vecchiája*
- [4] *ambizióne*
- [5] *impiegáto*
- [6] *tolleráre*
- [7] *affidare*

- [8] *província*
- [9] *perciò*
- [10] *ottenére*
- [11] *mezzo*
- [12] *leváre*
- [13] *sdegnáto*
- [14] *impossessársi*
- [15] *ucciso*
- [16] *forzáre*
- [17] *fuggíre*
- [18] *assénza*
- [19] *distúrbo*
- [20] *scacciáto*
- [21] *unito*
- [22] *assaltáre*
- [23] *preso*
- [24] *méttere*
- [25] *a fil di spada*
- [26] *moríre*
- [27] *tornáre*
- [28] *conclúdere*
- [29] *rotta*
- [30] *dichiaráto*
- [31] *dittatore*
- [32] *si disfece di*
- [33] *proscrizióne*
- [34] *ritirársi*
- [35] *sostenere*
- [36] *coraggiosaménte*
- [37] *rassegnáto*
- [38] *dettatúra*
- [39] *pedicolare*
- [40] *morbo*
- [41] *età*
- [42] *procuráre*
- [43] *annulláre*
- [44] *atto*
- [45] *scacciáto*
- [46] *colléga*
- [47] *accostársi*
- [48] *armáta*
- [49] *fuggíre*
- [50] *Sardégna*
- [51] *ammalársi*
- [52] *mandáto*
- [53] *eseguíre*
- [54] *proditoriaménte*
- [55] *ucciso*
- [56] *facilménte*
- [57] *ricuperáre*

- [58] *accendérsi*
- [59] *entráto*
- [60] *alleánza*
- [61] *impadroníto*
- [62] *lasciáto*
- [63] *andáre*
- [64] *fortunáto*
- [65] *mare*
- [66] *terra*
- [67] *forzare*
- [68] *Ponto*
- [69] *Tigràne*
- [70] *conquistáre*
- [71] *attaccáre*
- [72] *infantéria*
- [73] *cavallería*
- [74] *Nísibi*
- [75] *preso*
- [76] *abbandonáto*
- [77] *obbligáto*
- [78] *lasciáre*
- [79] *frutto*
- [80] *fática*
- [81] *vittória*
- [82] *forzáto*
- [83] *arrendérsi*
- [84] *contentarsi*
- [85] *incalzáre*
- [86] *aggiúngere*
- [87] *Ibérj*
- [88] *Albanési*
- [89] *finalménte*
- [90] *dappertútto*
- [91] *battúto*
- [92] *pensáre*
- [93] *fuggíre*
- [94] *Gállia*
- [95] *scoraggíto*
- [96] *rivólta*
- [97] *Farnáce*
- [98] *ammazzársi*
- [99] *vigorosaménte*
- [100] *continuáto*
- [101] *accéndersi*
- [102] *schíavo*
- [103] *Spartáco Enománo*
- [104] *Crisso*
- [105] *gladiatóre*
- [106] *disfatto*
- [107] *scuóla*

- [108] *appartenére*
- [109] *radunáto*
- [110] *disperáto*
- [111] *sconfíggere*
- [112] *vinto*
- [113] *pariménte*
- [114] *soggiogáre*
- [115] *corsáro*
- [116] *istigazióne*
- [117] *infestáre*
- [118] *straordinário*
- [119] *commissióne*
- [120] *a questo effétto*
- [121] *Gabiáno*
- [122] *aggrandíre*
- [123] *fuóri*
- [124] *capitale*
- [125] *perícolo*
- [126] *cospirazióne*
- [127] *Catilína*
- [128] *Léntulo*
- [129] *Cetégo*
- [130] *fare*
- [131] *uccídere*
- [132] *Ciceróne*
- [133] *abbruciáre*
- [134] *saccheggiáre*
- [135] *diségno*
- [136] *impedito*
- [137] *vigilánza*
- [138] *scacciáto*
- [139] *trasferírsi*
- [140] *cómplice*
- [141] *radunáto*
- [142] *capo*
- [143] *congiúra*
- [144] *succédere*
- [145] *sconfitto*
- [146] *Petrejo*
- [147] *António*
- [148] *luogotenénte*
- [149] *ucciso*
- [150] *battáglia*
- [151] *mondo*
- [152] *soggiogáto*
- [153] *arriváto*
- [154] *grandézza*
- [155] *appéna*
- [156] *estendérsi*
- [157] *estérno*

- [158] *forza*
- [159] *bastánte*
- [160] *rovináre*
- [161] *cadére*
- [162] *potére*
- [163] *cagionáto*
- [164] *ambizióne*
- [165] *principále*
- [166] *contésa*
- [167] *deriváre*
- [168] *pretura*
- [169] *spiráto*
- [170] *ottenére*
- [171] *eseguíre*
- [172] *meritáre*
- [173] *trióno*
- [174] *pospórre*
- [175] *aspettativa*
- [176] *consoláre*
- [177] *dignità*
- [178] *mentre*
- [179] *possibile*
- [180] *diligenza*
- [181] *unírsi*
- [182] *grande*
- [183] *oppórsi*
- [184] *atto*
- [185] *desideráre*
- [186] *ratificáto*
- [187] *ottenére*
- [188] *consoláto*
- [189] *fece ratificáre dal senato*
- [190] *divídere*
- [191] *terre della*
- [192] *repubblica*
- [193] *cittadíno*
- [194] *maritáre*
- [195] *préndere*
- [196] *Pisóne*
- [197] *in qualità di móglie*
- [198] *arte*
- [199] *imménso*
- [200] *generosità*
- [201] *guadagnáre*
- [202] *favóre*
- [203] *degli uomini di qualunque rango*
- [204] *grado*
- [205] *procuráre*
- [206] *governáre*
- [207] *debelláre*

[208] *compreso*
[209] *Pirenéi*
[210] *Alpi*
[211] *Reno*
[212] *forma*
[213] *impórre*
[214] *annuále*
[215] *tribúto*
[216] *attaccáre*
[217] *Tedeschi*
[218] *di là*
[219] *visitáre*
[220] *Británno*
[221] *niúno*
[222] *venúto*
[223] *intervállo*
[224] *entráre*
[225] *confederazióne*
[226] *virtù*
[227] *continuáre*
[228] *Spagna*
[229] *Parti*
[230] *in conseguénza*
[231] *andáre*
[232] *períre*
[233] *miseraménte*
[234] *parte*
[235] *incursióne*
[236] *valorosaménte*
[237] *rispinto*
[238] *tolleráre*
[239] *eguale*
[240] *superióre*
[241] *partíto*
[242] *cercáre*
[243] *leváre*
[244] *govérno*
[245] *spiráre*
[246] *canto*
[247] *trattáre*
[248] *nell' istéssó modo*
[249] *consoláto*
[250] *decreto*
[251] *licenziáre*
[252] *interpórre*
[253] *autorità*
[254] *lasciáre*
[255] *trasferírsi*
[256] *accostáre*
[257] *riempíre*

[258] *costernazione*
[259] *abbandonare*
[260] *senz' altro*
[261] *poco dopo*
[262] *passare*
[263] *Grécia*
[264] *vincere*
[265] *forzare*
[266] *arrendersi*
[267] *prigioniero*
[268] *ritorno*
[269] *prendere*
[270] *Marsiglia*
[271] *uffizio*
[272] *scelto*
[273] *dato*
[274] *vita*
[275] *sconfitto*
[276] *campo*
[277] *Farsagli*
[278] *Egitto*
[279] *ordine*
[280] *Tolomeo*
[281] *età*
[282] *pure*
[283] *venire*
[284] *pericoloso*
[285] *fatto d'armi*
[286] *fortunatamente*
[287] *fu vittorioso*
[288] *consegnare*
[289] *regno*
[290] *uccidersi*
[291] *seguire*
[292] *segnalato*
[293] *correzione*
[294] *calendario*
[295] *vincere*
[296] *pugnalo*
[297] *senato*
[298] *cospirazione*
[299] *convulsione*
[300] *mondo*
[301] *conturbato*
[302] *disturbo*
[303] *succedere*
[304] *Clodio Pulcro*
[305] *fatto*
[306] *esiliare*
[307] *condannato*

- [308] *complice*
[309] *procésso*
[310] *calamità*
[311] *soffríre*
[312] *vilménte*
[313] *in nissún conto*
[314] *come si conveniva*
[315] *dignità*
[316] *richiamáto*
[317] *interposizióne*
[318] *ricévere*
[319] *onóre*
[320] *dichiaráre*
[321] *Cipro*
[322] *appartenére*
[323] *mandáto*
[324] *impossessársi*
[325] *ísola*
[326] *gettáto*
[327] *danaro*
[328] *prevenire*
[329] *disgrázia*
[330] *volontária*
[331] *accordáre*
[332] *dignità di pretóre*
[333] *ritórno*
[334] *per votazione dell'assemblea*
[335] *elezióne*
[336] *rifiutáre*
[337] *desideróso*
[338] *ottenére*
[339] *libero*
[340] *suffragio*
[341] *frustráto*
[342] *speránza*
[343] *preferíto*
[344] *corruzióne*
[345] *domináre*
[346] *tutto*
[347] *elezióne*
[348] *candidáto*
[349] *rattristante*
[350] *confusióne*
[351] *interregno*
[352] *colléga*
[353] *affátto*
[354] *sevéro*
[355] *perquisizióne*
[356] *delítto*
[357] *uccídere*

[358] *bandito*
[359] *accéndere*
[360] *sedizioso*
[361] *arrínga*
[362] *incendiáre*
[363] *corpo*
[364] *pubblicaménte*
[365] *minacciáre*
[366] *demolíre*
[367] *assassíno*
[368] *Giúlio*
[369] *adottáto*
[370] *testaménto*
[371] *sprezzáto*
[372] *leváre*
[373] *veteráno*
[374] *oppórre*
[375] *tiránnico*
[376] *portaménto*
[377] *strappáre*
[378] *passággio*
[379] *assedíato*
[380] *consoláto*
[381] *Írzio*
[382] *istigazióne*
[383] *dichiaráto*
[384] *nemíco*
[385] *intraprésó*
[386] *unírsi*
[387] *commissióne*
[388] *potére*
[389] *terribile*
[390] *sanguinóso*
[391] *battáglia*
[392] *dato*
[393] *soldáto della guárdia*
[394] *assedio*
[395] *leváto*
[396] *uccídere*
[397] *cabalizzare*
[398] *radunáre*
[399] *formidábile*
[400] *risólvere*
[401] *a poco a poco*
[402] *abbassáre*
[403] *per timóre che*
[404] *diventáre*
[405] *poténte*
[406] *timoróso*
[407] *entráre*

[408] *lega*
[409] *consequentemente*
[410] *commissionário*
[411] *regolare*
[412] *repubblica*
[413] *diviso*
[414] *império*
[415] *proscrivere*
[416] *Tullio Cicerone*
[417] *procurare*
[418] *scampare*
[419] *capitano*
[420] *causa*
[421] *difendere*
[422] *processo*
[423] *orrendo*
[424] *strage*
[425] *proscrizione*
[426] *sommario*
[427] *dare*
[428] *principio*
[429] *Lione*
[430] *dare*
[431] *principale*
[432] *congiurato*
[433] *ala*
[434] *dritto*
[435] *vittorioso*
[436] *parte*
[437] *campo*
[438] *saccheggiato*
[439] *sconfitto*
[440] *credere*
[441] *uccidersi*
[442] *rotto*
[443] *conflitto*
[444] *assassino*
[445] *vivere*
[446] *perire*
[447] *violento*
[448] *Suetonio*
[449] *uccidersi*
[450] *stiletto*
[451] *vittoria*
[452] *partire*
[453] *venire alle armi*
[454] *triumviro*
[455] *moglie*
[456] *donna*
[457] *virile*

[458] *spírito*
[459] *dichiaráto*
[460] *assediáre*
[461] *arrendérsi*
[462] *invitáto*
[463] *scorrería*
[464] *segnaláto*
[465] *sconfitta*
[466] *scacciáre*
[467] *ricuperáre*
[468] *flotta*
[469] *comándo*
[470] *infestáre*
[471] *présto*
[472] *rotto*
[473] *combattiménto*
[474] *seguíre*
[475] *malmenato*
[476] *forzáto*
[477] *fuggíre*
[478] *messo*
[479] *cenno*
[480] *protezióne*
[481] *intraprésa*
[482] *ignominiosamente*
[483] *battúto*
[484] *affátto*
[485] *dedicáto*
[486] *ripudiáre*
[487] *dichiaráre*
[488] *Azio*
[489] *promontório*
[490] *Epíro*
[491] *vascéllo*
[492] *prodigosaménte*
[493] *grande*
[494] *rassomigliáre*
[495] *castélló*
[496] *muóvere*
[497] *fuga*
[498] *cambiáre*
[499] *sorte*
[500] *dubbíoso*
[501] *battáglia*
[502] *rovína*
[503] *assediáto*
[504] *ammazzársi*
[505] *seguíre*
[506] *esémpio*

(Of Rome, 725—Of Christ, 11.)

After the death of Antony and Cleopatra, [1]Egypt was [2]reduced to the [3]form of a [4]province. Cæsar, in the year 725, [5]triumphed three times, for the [6]conquest of [7]Dalmatia, the victory at Actium, and the [8]reducing of Egypt. After which he [9]advised with Agrippa and Mecænas, either [10]seriously, or [11]pretendedly, about the [12]laying down of his [13]authority; Agrippa was for it, Mecænas against it; this last [14]advice he [15]resolved to follow, but [16]brought a [17]bill [18]nevertheless into the senate [19]to divest himself of his power, and by that [20]stratagem got it [21]secured to him both by the senate and the people, in the year 726.

[22]Cornelius Gallus, a [23]Roman [24]knight, [25]governor of Egypt, being [26]banished for his [27]insolence, slew himself. Augustus [28]carried on a war against the Cantabri and Austus for some years, by his [29]lieutenants: that is to say, from the year 729 to 735, in which they were entirely [30]reduced by Agrippa; who, upon his [31]return [32]refused a [33]triumph which was [34]offered him. [35]Phraates, king of the Parthians, about this time [36]restored the Roman [37]standards that had been [38]taken from Crassus.

For two of his [39]friends, Mecænas and M. Vipsanius Agrippa, he had a [40]particular [41]esteem above all others; the [42]former was a great [43]patron of [44]learning and [45]learned men. Augustus [146]made Agrippa his [46]son-in-law, by [47]marrying his daughter Julia to him, whom he had by Scribonia. She had children, C. and L. Cæsars, Agrippa Posthumus, Agrippina married to Germanicus, Drusus's son, Livia's [48]grandson, and Julia, whom Æmilius married. He took Livia, when she was [49]big with child, by her former [50]husband Tiberius Nero, by whom he had no [51]issue, though she had by Nero, Tiberius, who was emperor afterwards, and Drusus who [52]died in Germany.

Tiberius having gotten the [53]tribunitial [54]power for five years, was [55]sent to [56]settle the [57]affairs of Armenia. Soon after he [58]retired to Rhodes, where, for fear of [59]falling under the [60]displeasure of his [61]step-sons, he [62]continued seven years. But the [63]occasion of his [64]retirement was his [65]aversion for his wife Julia, who [66]spent her time in all [67]manner of [68]debauchery. Augustus, upon a [69]discovery of her [70]pranks, [71]banished her.

The [72]age of this emperor [73]produced several great [74]men: amongst the [75]Greeks [76]Dionysius Halicarnassensis and [77]Nicholas Damascenus were [78]famous for their [79]talents in writing [80]history; and amongst the [81]Latins [82]Cornelius Nepos, Atticus's [83]son-in-law, and Sallust, who died four years before the [84]battle of Actium. In this age lived likewise those [147][85]celebrated [86]poets, [87]Virgil, [88]Horace, [89]Ovid, [90]Tibullus, and [91]Propertius.

Augustus died at Nola, in Campania, in the 14th year of [92]Christ, and the 76th year of his age, having [93]held the empire by himself, from the death of M. Antony, forty-three years; he was an [94]excellent [95]prince, and [96]necessary for those times.

He was [97]succeeded by Tiberius, a prince of a [98]savage [99]disposition, and [100]given up to all manner of debauchery; he was the son of Livia by Nero. He [101]dissembled his [102]vices at the [103]beginning of his reign with [104]wonderful [105]art, through fear of Germanicus, his brother's son, whom he had [106]adopted at the [107]command of his [108]father-in-law. For, as he [109]gained a great [110]reputation by his [111]virtues and [112]exploits in war, he was [113]looked upon with a [114]jealous eye, as [115]fitter for the empire than himself. He [116]removed him from Germany where he had [117]wonderful [118]success against the enemy, into the [119]East, to [120]fight against the Parthians, in the year 769, having sent at the same time Cn. Piso into Syria, between whom and Germanicus was a [121]mortal enmity. Wherefore Germanicus died, not without the [122]suspicion of having been [123]poisoned by him, for which being [124]prosecuted at Rome by Agrippina, the wife of Germanicus, he [125]prevented his [126]sentence by a [127]voluntary death.

[128]Ælius Sejanus, a Roman [129]knight, was afterwards [130]raised by Tiberius, who after a great many [131]wicked [132]actions, [133]aiming now at no less than the empire itself, was, by a [134]letter of Tiberius to the senate, [135]thrown from the [136]top of all his [137]grandeur, and died by the [138]hand of an [139]executioner, with all his [140]family, in the 18th year of Tiberius. [148]

About the 18th year of his [141]reign, he [142]retired to Caprea, an [143]island on the [144]coast of Campania, with a [145]design of never returning to the town, where he [146]privately [147]wallowed

in all manner of [148]debauchery, and died in the 23rd year of his reign, to the great [149]joy of every one, being then in the 78th year of his age.

[150]Jesus Christ, the son of God, was [151]born of the [152]Virgin Mary, in the reign of Augustus, and [153]crucified in that of Tiberius, being then thirty-three years of age.

Caius Cæsar Caligula, so [154]called from a [155]shoe [156]worn by the [157]soldiery, which, when a boy, he [158]wore in the camp, [159]succeeded Tiberius, being the son of Germanicus and Agrippina, the daughter of M. Agrippa and Julia. He was [160]entered into the five and twentieth year of his age. Great was the joy of the people upon his first [161]accession to the [162]throne, and no less were their [163]hopes that he would be [164]like Germanicus his father, who is said to have been [165]possessed of all the good [166]qualities of [167]body and [168]mind. And indeed as the worst of princes frequently [169]begin well, he gave many [170]signs of his [171]moderation and [172]regard to the good of the public. But soon after, as if he had [173]put off all [174]humanity, he [175]outstripped the most savage [176]creatures in [177]cruelty; and having made sad [178]havoc among all [179]ranks and [180]degrees of men, he [181]killed likewise Macro, [182]commander of the [183]prætorian [184]bands, by whose [185]means he had been made emperor. He also [186]committed [187]crimes with his sisters. Having in a year's time [188]exhausted [189]immense [190]treasures that had been [191]left by Tiberius, he [192]fell to [193]proscribing and [194]plundering. Among other proofs of his cruelty, he was [195]heard to say, I [196]wish the Roman people had but one [197]neck. In all his [198]buildings, or public [199]works, he [200]effected what was [201]looked upon to be impossible. He [202]ordered himself to be [203]worshipped as a god throughout the [204]world, and [205]temples to be [206]erected to him. At last, he was slain by Chærea Cassius, [207]tribune of a [208]cohort of his [209]guards, and some others, who had [210]entered into a [211]plot against him, after he had [212]reigned three years, ten months, and eight days, and [213]lived twenty-nine years. [149]

Claudius Nero, Caligula's uncle, and the son of Drusius [214]reigned after him, [215]naturally no bad man, but [216]senseless and foolish. He was not naturally [217]cruel, but only so when [218]instigated by others, [219]especially by his [220]freedmen and his [221]wives, into whose hands he [222]gave up himself and his [223]affairs. His first lady was Messalina, whose [224]depravity and [225]dissoluteness every body [226]knew but himself; till at last [227]venturing to [228]marry one Silius, a knight, she was by her [229]husband's order slain, together with her [230]paramour, at the [231]instigation of [232]Narcissus, who with [233]Pallas, another of his [234]freedmen, [235]ruled him entirely. [150]

Another [236]instance of his [237]folly is, that after Messalina was [238]put to death, by whom he had his son [239]Britannicus, and Octavia, he married Agrippina Germanicus his brother's daughter, the mother of Nero by [240]Domitius, in the ninth year of his reign, by the [241]advice of Pallas: at whose and Agrippina's [242]request, he [243]adopted Nero, and [244]passing by Britannicus, [245]designed him for his [246]successor. He [247]banished the [248]Jews from Rome, and the [249]mathematicians out of Italy: and [250]undertaking an [251]expedition into [252]Britain, he [253]subdued it all in sixteen days time, as Dio says, in the third year of his reign. He died in the year of Christ 54, by [254]poison [255]put in a [256]mushroom by Agrippina. He reigned thirteen years eight months and twenty days, and lived sixty-four years.

Domitius Nero, [257]mounted the throne after the death of his [258]step-father, being then seventeen years of age. He at first, [259]behaved himself in such a manner, that he might be [260]reckoned among the best of [261]princes; that is, as long as he [262]listened to the [263]precepts of his [264]master Seneca. Afterwards, being [265]corrupted with [266]luxury and [267]flattery, he [268]became more like a [269]monster than a man. He [270]stopped the progress of the Parthians, who had [271]over-run Armenia, by Corbulo, a [272]gallant [273]commander, and a person of great [274]virtue and [275]authority, who [276]recovered Armenia, in the ninth year of Nero, and [277]obliged [278]Tiridates, Vologesis king of the Parthians brother, to [279]come to Rome, and to [280]beg his [281]crown of Nero, in the thirteenth year of Nero's reign; in which year he [282]recalled Corbulo, and put him to death. He [283]destroyed Britannicus by [284]poison in the very [285]beginning of his reign. He likewise [286]ordered his mother Agrippina to be put to death, after having first [287]disgraced and [288]banished her from the [289]court, which [290]parricide, that nothing might be [291]wanting to [292]complete the [293]unhappiness of the times, the Senate [294]approved of. Afterwards having married Poppæa, whom he [295]took from Otho, he [296]banished Octavia, and at last put her to death. Upon the [297]discovery of a [298]plot, which [151]

Piso, and some others had [299]laid against him; he put to death the [300]poet Lucan, and Seneca the philosopher, with several others, in the year of Christ 65, and the same year he [301]kicked his wife Poppæa, when [302]pregnant, [303]to death. He had the [304]impudence to [305]appear upon the [306]stage, and [307]act amongst the [308]players and [309]harpers, and [310]ride [311]chariot-races at the [312]Circensian games; and to [313]represent for his [314]diversion the [315]appearance of [316]Troy in [317]flames, he [318]set fire to the city, and [319]imputed it to the [320]Christians. He [321]became so odious and [322]contemptible by his [323]villanies, that he was [324]forsaken by all, and being [325]sought for in order to be [326]punished, he [327]performed the [328]executioner's [329]office upon himself, in the 14th year of his [330]reign, and 68th of our Lord.

[152]

A little before Nero's death, [331]C. Julius Vindex, who was [332]proprætor of Gaul, [333]openly [334]rebelled, and [335]persuaded Sergius Galba, [336]governor of Spain, to [337]set up for emperor, which he accordingly did, and [338]put Vindex to death presently after. He reigned about seven months, being very [339]old. He was slain together with Piso, whom he had [340]adopted, after M. Silvius Otho was [341]proclaimed emperor; he reigned only about three months.

In the mean time, Vitellius [342]trusting to the [343]legions of Germany, which he [344]commanded in [345]quality of a [346]consular [347]lieutenant-general, [348]took upon him the [349]name of emperor, and [350]defeated Otho's army in a [351]rencontre near [352]Bebriacum, who being [353]weary of a civil war, killed himself.

[153]

Vitellius reigned eight months after Otho, and was [354]succeeded by Vespasian, who had been [355]sent by Nero to [356]quell the [357]Jews. He reigned ten years with the greatest [358]justice and [359]clemency. He was a great [360]encourager of [361]learning and [362]learned men. The only thing that was [363]blamed in him, was his [364]covetousness, which he used to [365]excuse, by [366]alleging the [367]emptiness of the [368]Exchequer.

The war in [369]Judea was [370]finished in his time, to which he was sent by Nero, as we have [371]already [372]said. It was [373]begun by some [374]seditious [375]people that were [376]headed by Eleazar, the son of Ananias, the [377]high-priest, who [378]took up arms against the Romans, under the [379]pretence of [380]religion. Cestius Gallus, [381]lieutenant of Syria, [382]laid siege to [383]Jerusalem, but was [384]beaten off with great [385]slaughter in the 12th year of Nero. The [386]victorious Jews upon their [387]return to Jerusalem, amongst other generals, [388]made choice of [389]Josephus, the son of [390]Matthias for one. In the year of Christ 67, Vespasian, [391]carrying his arms through Galilee and Judea, [392]took, besides most of their towns, Josephus their [393]commander, who [394]foretold his [395]rise. At last, he [396]fell upon Jerusalem, the [397]metropolis of the [398]nation, which was taken by his son Titus, in the second year of his reign.

[154]

This [399]proved the [400]ruin of the nation, and of the very name of the Jews. The [401]calamity was indeed so [402]violent, and the [403]miseries they [404]suffered so [405]various, that it was [406]visible they were [407]punished for the [408]horrid [409]murder of the [410]only begotten son of God; for a [411]dreadful [412]famine [413]forced the [414]besieged to [415]live on human [416]flesh; mothers to [417]eat their own children; and eleven hundred thousand [418]persons (a thing hardly ever [419]heard of before), [420]perished in that [421]siege. The city was [422]finally [423]razed to the ground. Vespasian, in the third year of his reign [424]triumphed, with his son Titus, over the Jews; upon which he [425]shut up the [426]temple of [427]Janus. He [428]died in his ninth [429]consulship whilst he was [430]giving [431]audience to some [432]ambassadors, having lived sixty-nine years, one month and seven days, and reigned eight years.

Titus, who [433]succeeded his father, is [434]deservedly [435]ranked among the best [436]emperors, although before he [437]came to the [438]empire, he was [439]thought a man of a cruel [440]temper, [441]covetous, and [442]depraved. But upon his [443]advancement, he was so much [444]altered for the better, that he [445]deserved the [446]title of the [447]delight of [448]mankind. He was [449]remarkable for great [450]mildness, and [451]easy temper, and never [452]sent any one away [453]dissatisfied; and [454]remembering once at [455]supper that he had [456]done nobody any [457]kindness that day, he told all those who were about him that he had [458]lost a day. In his reign, in the year of Christ 80, there was a [459]dreadful [460]eruption of [461]flames and [462]ashes out of [463]mount Vesuvius, which [464]flew as far as Africa, Syria, and Egypt; and the two towns of Pompeii and [465]Herculaneum[A] were [466]utterly [467]ruined by it. This good emperor died in the year of Christ 81, two years and three months after he had [468]succeeded his father, and in the one and fortieth year of his [469]age, not without the [470]suspicion of having been [471]poisoned by

[155]

his ^[472]brother Domitian.

[A] The Manuscripts, Vases, &c. &c. which within the last few years have been found among the ruins of these places, are in the present day objects of great curiosity and interest.

Titus was very much ^[473]lamented both by the senate and people: and their ^[474]concern for his death was very much ^[475]increased by his brother and ^[476]successor Domitian, the worst prince of all that ^[477]came before, or ^[478]followed after him. At first he made some ^[479]show of ^[480]clemency and ^[481]justice, but soon ^[482]discovered his ^[483]temper, and ^[484]imitated Nero in ^[485]cruelty, ^[486]rapine, and ^[487]debauchery. He ^[488]ordered himself to be ^[489]called God, and was at last ^[490]destroyed by means of a ^[491]plot, in the year of Christ 96, after he had reigned fifteen years.

[156]

FOOTNOTES

- [1] *Egíto*
- [2] *ridóto*
- [3] *forma*
- [4] *província*
- [5] *trionfáre*
- [6] *conquísta*
- [7] *Dalmázia*
- [8] *sommíssione*
- [9] *consigliársi*
- [10] *seriaménte*
- [11] *fintaménte*
- [12] *depórsi*
- [13] *autorità*
- [14] *consíglío*
- [15] *risólvere*
- [16] *presentáre*
- [17] *dimanda*
- [18] *nonostánte*
- [19] *per rassegnare*
- [20] *stratagémma*
- [21] *assicurársi*
- [22] *Cornélio Gallo*
- [23] *Románo*
- [24] *cavaliére*
- [25] *governatóre*
- [26] *esiliáto*
- [27] *insolenza*
- [28] *fare*
- [29] *luogotenénte*
- [30] *sottomessi*
- [31] *ritórno*
- [32] *ricusáre*
- [33] *triónfo*
- [34] *esibíto*
- [35] *Fraate*
- [36] *restituíre*
- [37] *stendárho*
- [38] *preso*

- [39] *amíco*
- [40] *particoláre*
- [41] *stima*
- [42] *primo*
- [43] *protettóre*
- [44] *sciénza*
- [45] *sapiénte*
- [46] *género*
- [47] *dare per moglié*
- [48] *nipóte*
- [49] *grávida*
- [50] *maríto*
- [51] *progénie*
- [52] *moríre*
- [53] *tribunízio*
- [54] *potére*
- [55] *mandáto*
- [56] *regoláre*
- [57] *affáre*
- [58] *ritirársi*
- [59] *cadere*
- [60] *dispiacére*
- [61] *figliástro*
- [62] *continuáre*
- [63] *cagíone*
- [64] *ritiratézza*
- [65] *avversióne*
- [66] *passáre*
- [67] *sorta*
- [68] *dissolutézza*
- [69] *scopérta*
- [70] *stravagánza*
- [71] *bandíre*
- [72] *sécolo*
- [73] *prodúrre*
- [74] *uomo*
- [75] *Greco*
- [76] *Dionísio Alicarnasséno*
- [77] *Nicóla Damascéno*
- [78] *célebre*
- [79] *talénto*
- [80] *istória*
- [81] *Latino*
- [82] *Cornélio Nepóte*
- [83] *género*
- [84] *battágliá*
- [85] *célebre*
- [86] *poéta*
- [87] *Virgilio*
- [88] *Orázio*

- [89] *Ovídio*
- [90] *Tibúllo*
- [91] *Propérzio*
- [92] *Cristo*
- [93] *tenúto*
- [94] *eccellénte*
- [95] *príncipe*
- [96] *necessário*
- [97] *succédere*
- [98] *salvático*
- [99] *indole*
- [100] *abbandonáto*
- [101] *nascóndere*
- [102] *vizio*
- [103] *principio*
- [104] *maraviglióso*
- [105] *arte*
- [106] *adottáto*
- [107] *comándo*
- [108] *suócero*
- [109] *acquistáre*
- [110] *riputazióne*
- [111] *virtù*
- [112] *fatto d'arme*
- [113] *risguardáto*
- [114] *gelóso*
- [115] *próprio*
- [116] *rimuóvere*
- [117] *maraviglióso*
- [118] *succésso*
- [119] *Levánte*
- [120] *battersi*
- [121] *rancóre mortále*
- [122] *sospétto*
- [123] *avvelenáto*
- [124] *proseguíto*
- [125] *preveníre*
- [126] *senténza*
- [127] *volontário*
- [128] *Elio Sejáno*
- [129] *cavaliére*
- [130] *innalzáto*
- [131] *malvaggio*
- [132] *azióne*
- [133] *aspiráre*
- [134] *léttera*
- [135] *precipitáto*
- [136] *colmo*
- [137] *grandézza*
- [138] *mano*

- [139] *carnéfica*
- [140] *famiglia*
- [141] *regno*
- [142] *ritirársi*
- [143] *ísola*
- [144] *costa*
- [145] *intenzióne*
- [146] *segretamente*
- [147] *voltoláre*
- [148] *dissolutézza*
- [149] *allegrézza*
- [150] *Gesù Cristo*
- [151] *nato*
- [152] *Vergine Mária*
- [153] *crocefisso*
- [154] *chiamáto*
- [155] *scarpa*
- [156] *portáto*
- [157] *soldatésca*
- [158] *portáre*
- [159] *succédere*
- [160] *entráto*
- [161] *avveniménto*
- [162] *trono*
- [163] *speránza*
- [164] *rassomigliáre*
- [165] *dotáto*
- [166] *qualità*
- [167] *corpo*
- [168] *mente*
- [169] *principiáre*
- [170] *segno*
- [171] *moderazióne*
- [172] *risguárdo*
- [173] *spogliáto*
- [174] *umanità*
- [175] *superáre*
- [176] *animále*
- [177] *crudeltà*
- [178] *strage*
- [179] *rango*
- [180] *grado*
- [181] *uccídere*
- [182] *capitáno*
- [183] *pretóriano*
- [184] *guardia*
- [185] *mezzo*
- [186] *comméttere*
- [187] *delitto*
- [188] *dato fondo all'*

[189] *imménso*
[190] *tesóro*
[191] *lasciáto*
[192] *cominciáre*
[193] *proscrívere*
[194] *sacchegiáre*
[195] *sentíto*
[196] *vorréi*
[197] *collo*
[198] *edifízio*
[199] *lavóro*
[200] *effettuáre*
[201] *stimáto*
[202] *farsi*
[203] *adoráre*
[204] *mondo*
[205] *témpio*
[206] *edificáre*
[207] *tribuno*
[208] *coorte*
[209] *guárdia*
[210] *fatto*
[211] *cospirazióne*
[212] *regnáto*
[213] *vissúto*
[214] *regnáre*
[215] *naturalménte*
[216] *insensáto*
[217] *crudéle*
[218] *istigáto*
[219] *sopratútto*
[220] *liberto*
[221] *moglie*
[222] *abbandonársi*
[223] *affáre*
[224] *sfrenatezza*
[225] *dissolutézza*
[226] *essere noto*
[227] *arrischiáre*
[228] *sposáre*
[229] *maríto*
[230] *drudo*
[231] *istigazióne*
[232] *Narcísso*
[233] *Pállade*
[234] *libérto*
[235] *governáre*
[236] *argoménto*
[237] *pazzía*
[238] *messo*

- [239] *Británico*
- [240] *Domizio*
- [241] *consiglio*
- [242] *richiesta*
- [243] *adottare*
- [244] *dimenticare*
- [245] *destinare*
- [246] *successore*
- [247] *bandire*
- [248] *Giudeo*
- [249] *matemático*
- [250] *intraprendere*
- [251] *spedizione*
- [252] *Bretagna*
- [253] *soggiogare*
- [254] *veleno*
- [255] *nesso*
- [256] *fungo*
- [257] *ascendere*
- [258] *patrigno*
- [259] *comportarsi*
- [260] *annoverato*
- [261] *principe*
- [262] *ascoltare*
- [263] *precetto*
- [264] *maestro*
- [265] *corrotto*
- [266] *lussuria*
- [267] *adulazione*
- [268] *diventare*
- [269] *mostro*
- [270] *arrestare*
- [271] *trascorrere*
- [272] *valoroso*
- [273] *capitano*
- [274] *virtù*
- [275] *autorità*
- [276] *ricuperare*
- [277] *obbligare*
- [278] *Tiridate Vologeso*
- [279] *venire*
- [280] *domandare*
- [281] *corona*
- [282] *richiamare*
- [283] *far morire*
- [284] *veleno*
- [285] *principio*
- [286] *ordinare*
- [287] *privata degli onori*
- [288] *bandito*

- [289] *corte*
[290] *parricídio*
[291] *mancáre*
[292] *compíre*
[293] *miséria*
[294] *approváre*
[295] *leváre*
[296] *esiliáre*
[297] *scopérta*
[298] *trama*
[299] *macchináto*
[300] *poéta Lucáno*
[301] *dare dei calci*
[302] *grávida*
[303] *in modo da farla morire*
[304] *sfacciatággine*
[305] *comparíre*
[306] *teátro*
[307] *recitáre*
[308] *commediánte*
[309] *suonatóre d'arpa*
[310] *fare*
[311] *corse di carro*
[312] *giuóchi Circénsi*
[313] *rappresentáre*
[314] *spasso*
[315] *apparénza*
[316] *Troja*
[317] *fiámma*
[318] *incendiáre*
[319] *imputáre*
[320] *Cristiáno*
[321] *diventáre*
[322] *sprezzábile*
[323] *scelleratézza*
[324] *abbandonáto*
[325] *cercáto*
[326] *castigáto*
[327] *eseguíre*
[328] *carnéfice*
[329] *ufficio*
[330] *regno*
[331] *C. Giúlio Vindíce*
[332] *propretóre*
[333] *apertaménte*
[334] *ribellársi*
[335] *persuadére*
[336] *governatóre*
[337] *farsi*
[338] *méttere*

[339] *vécchio*
[340] *adottáto*
[341] *proclamáto*
[342] *confidársi*
[343] *legióne*
[344] *comandáre*
[345] *qualità*
[346] *consoláre*
[347] *luogotenénte*
[348] *préndere*
[349] *nome*
[350] *sconfíggere*
[351] *combattiménto*
[352] *Bebríaco*
[353] *stanco*
[354] *succedúto*
[355] *mandáto*
[356] *reprímere*
[357] *Giudéo*
[358] *giustízia*
[359] *cleménza*
[360] *promotóre*
[361] *sciénza*
[362] *sapiénte*
[363] *biasimáto*
[364] *cupidígia*
[365] *scusáre*
[366] *allegáre*
[367] *povertà*
[368] *erário*
[369] *Giudéa*
[370] *termináto*
[371] *già*
[372] *detto*
[373] *principiáto*
[374] *sedizióso*
[375] *gente*
[376] *comandáto*
[377] *gran sacerdoté*
[378] *prendere*
[379] *pretésto*
[380] *religióne*
[381] *luogotenénte*
[382] *assediáre*
[383] *Gierusalémme*
[384] *rispínto*
[385] *stráge*
[386] *vincitóre*
[387] *ritórno*
[388] *scégliere*

[389] *Giuseppe*
[390] *Mattia*
[391] *portáre*
[392] *pigliáre*
[393] *comandánte*
[394] *prédire*
[395] *elevazióne*
[396] *gettársi*
[397] *metrópoli*
[398] *nazióne*
[399] *cagionáre*
[400] *rovína*
[401] *calamità*
[402] *violento*
[403] *miséria*
[404] *soffríre*
[405] *differénte*
[406] *visibile*
[407] *puníto*
[408] *orréndo*
[409] *omicídio*
[410] *unigénito*
[411] *terribile*
[412] *fame*
[413] *forzáre*
[414] *assediáto*
[415] *vívère*
[416] *carne*
[417] *mangiáre*
[418] *persóna*
[419] *sentíto*
[420] *períre*
[421] *asséδιο*
[422] *finalménte*
[423] *spianáto*
[424] *trionfáre*
[425] *chiúdere*
[426] *témpio*
[427] *Giáno*
[428] *moríre*
[429] *consoláto*
[430] *dare*
[431] *udiénza*
[432] *ambasciadóre*
[433] *succédere*
[434] *meritaménte*
[435] *annoveráto*
[436] *imperatóre*
[437] *arriváre*
[438] *império*

[439] *credúto*
[440] *natúra*
[441] *aváro*
[442] *sensuále*
[443] *avanzaménto*
[444] *cambiáto*
[445] *meritáre*
[446] *título*
[447] *delízia*
[448] *génere umáno*
[449] *notábile*
[450] *benignità*
[451] *piacevolézza*
[452] *rimandare*
[453] *malconténto*
[454] *ricordársi*
[455] *cena*
[456] *fatto*
[457] *benefício*
[458] *perdúto*
[459] *spaventévole*
[460] *eruzione*
[461] *fiámma*
[462] *cénere*
[463] *Monte Vesúvio*
[464] *spargersi*
[465] *Ercoláno*
[466] *affátto*
[467] *distrútto*
[468] *succedúto*
[469] *età*
[470] *sospétto*
[471] *avvelenáto*
[472] *fratéllo*
[473] *compianto*
[474] *afflizióne*
[475] *accresciúto*
[476] *successóre*
[477] *precedere*
[478] *seguíre*
[479] *mostra*
[480] *cleménza*
[481] *giustízia*
[482] *scopríre*
[483] *natúra*
[484] *imitáre*
[485] *crudeltà*
[486] *rapína*
[487] *lussúria*
[488] *farsi*

[489]	<i>chiamáre</i>
[490]	<i>uccíso</i>
[491]	<i>conspirazióne</i>

CHAP. IX.

(Of Rome, 836—Of Christ, 96.)

[1]Cocceius Nerva succeeded Domitian in the empire. He reigned but one year, four months, and eleven days; an [2]excellent prince, but [3]despised for his age. He [4]annulled all the [5]acts of Domitian, and [6]restored what had been [7]taken from the people by [8]violence and [9]injustice: but he [10]wanted [11]authority to [12]keep the soldiers within [13]due bounds; wherefore those who were [14]concerned in the death of Domitian, from whom he had [15]received the empire, were [16]killed by the [17]guards, [18]in spite of all he could do to [19]prevent it. He made Trajan, [20]lieutenant of Germany, his [21]adopted son, with whom he lived three months.

Trajan [22]took upon him the [23]government of the empire at [24]Cologn, being then in the 42nd year of his age; and a man [25]excellently [26]skilled in the [27]military art. He was likewise a person of great prudence, [28]moderation, and [29]meekness of [30]temper; so that he was thought by all to [31]deserve the [32]surname of [33]Optimus. He [34]added Dacia to the empire, and, [35]marching into the [36]East, [37]subdued the [38]Armenians, the [39]Iberians, the [40]Colchians, the [41]Sarmatians, the [42]Osrhoenians, the [43]Arabians, and the [44]Bosphorians. He likewise [45]fell upon the Parthians, and [46]took the cities Seleucia, [47]Ctesiphon, and [48]Babylon, with several others. But upon his [49]taking a voyage in the [50]Red Sea, almost all those nations [51]rose in rebellion. He, however, [52]quickly [53]reduced them either in person or by his [54]lieutenants. There was in his time a great [55]earthquake, which [56]ruined the city of [57]Antioch: it [58]happened in the year of Christ 115, in the [59]consulship of Messala and Pedo, the latter of whom was [60]buried in the [61]ruins of the [62]place, and Trajan was [63]drawn through a [64]window, and had [65]much ado to [66]escape. The Jews of [67]Syrene [68]took up arms, and [69]exercised all manner of [70]cruelty upon the Romans and Greeks throughout [71]Egypt and [72]Cyprus. Trajan [73]suppressed this rebellion with infinite [74]slaughter, by his lieutenant Martius Turbo. [75]Whilst he was [76]preparing to march against the Parthians, who were up in arms, having [77]forced from amongst them the king that had been [78]given them by the Roman emperor; this excellent prince [79]fell ill, and [80]died at [81]Selinus in Cilicia. He reigned nineteen years, six months, and fifteen days.

[82]Ælius Hadrianus, Trajan's [83]cousin and [84]countryman, [85]obtained the empire after him, by the [86]favour of Plotina, Trajan's wife; a man very [87]fickle in his [88]temper and [89]genius, [90]equally [91]formed for virtue and [92]vice. He [93]went through all the [94]provinces of the empire, so that nobody had ever [95]travelled over so much of the [96]world as he. After the death of Trajan, he [97]abandoned Armenia, Syria, and Mesopotamia, to the Parthians, and [98]intended likewise to [99]leave Dacia, had he not been [100]apprehensive of [101]ruining the many thousands of Romans that were there.

He [102]rebuilt Jerusalem, which he [103]called Ælia Capitolina, and [104]settled a colony there; and in the same place where the [105]temple had [106]stood, [107]built another in [108]honour of [109]Jupiter; which so [110]provoked the Jews, that, [111]taking up arms, they [112]carried on the war with more [113]fury than ever, under the [114]conduct of Barchochebas; against whom, amongst other [115]skilful generals that he [116]employed, Hadrian [117]sent for Julius Severus out of [118]Britain, by whom the Jews were by [119]degrees [120]suppressed and utterly [121]destroyed; there being no less than 50,000 slain in that war, besides an [122]innumerable [123]multitude that were [124]consumed by [125]famine, [126]pestilence, and [127]fire; so that [128]Palestine became almost a [129]wilderness. After that time, the Jews were [130]forbidden, [131]under pain of death, to come to Jerusalem, unless one day in a year to [132]lament their [133]misery.

At last Hadrian [134]growing old and [135]infirm, having no [136]children of his own, [137]adopted [138]Arrius Antoninus, who was afterwards [139]surnamed [140]Pius, [141]upon condition that he should adopt Annius Verus, son of Ælius Verus, and [142]M. Aurelius Antoninus. After which he died at Baiæ, in the year of Christ 138, having lived sixty-two years, and reigned twenty-one and eleven months.

Antoninus Pius, adopted by Hadrian, [143]governed the Roman empire with so much virtue and [144]goodness, that he [145]surpassed all [146]example; for he [147]managed the [148]commonwealth rather with the [149]affection of a father, than with the authority of a prince, and [150]kept the world in [151]peace during his whole reign, for which [152]reason he was [153]compared to Numa. [154]Foreign and [155]remote princes and [156]nations [157]feared him to that degree, that they [158]referred the [159]decision of their [160]controversies to him. He [161]forbade any [162]scrutiny to be made after those, who had [163]entered into a [164]plot against his [165]life. He died in the seventieth year of his age, and twenty-fourth of his reign.

After him reigned M. Antonius Verus, [166]son-in-law of Pius; for he had married his daughter Valeria Faustina. He had from [167]his youth been [168]educated as well in the [169]knowledge of other [170]arts as the [171]studies of [172]wisdom, which he [173]made appear no less in his life and [174]conduct, than his [175]words and [176]professions. In the [177]beginning of his reign, he made L. Ælius Verus his [178]partner of the empire, to whom he married his daughter Lucilla. They reigned together eleven years, being of very [179]different [180]inclinations; for Verus was of a [181]listless, [182]luxurious, and [183]morose temper, but was [184]kept within [185]bounds through the [186]respect he had for his father-in-law; by whom he was [187]sent against the Parthians, and [188]carried on the war [189]successfully for four years, by his lieutenants; wherefore they both [190]triumphed over the Parthians. Afterwards they [191]undertook an [192]expedition against the Marcomanni, but upon their [193]march, Verus was [194]seized with an [195]apoplexy, between Concordia and [196]Altinum, and died. M. Aurelius carried on the war for three years against the Marcomanni, to whom the Quadi, [197]Vandals, [198]Sarmatians, and Suevi, [199]joined themselves. His army in [200]want [201]of water, was [202]relieved by a [203]legion of [204]Christians that was in it, who, by their [205]prayers [206]procured [207]rain from [208]heaven, according to [209]Eusebius. The [210]exchequer being quite [211]exhausted by the great [212]expense of the war, that he might not [213]burthen the people with [214]taxes, he [215]produced all the imperial [216]furniture and [217]sold it; and after the victory [218]restored the [219]price to those [220]purchasers who [221]were willing to [222]part with what they had [223]bought. Avidius Cassius, upon [224]false advice that he was [225]dead, [226]seized the [227]government, and was slain three months after. M. Aurelius died at Vienna, after a reign of nineteen years, and eleven months. [161]

He was [228]succeeded by his [229]wicked son Aurelius Commodus Antoninus, who [230]resembled Nero for [231]cruelty, [232]lust, [233]avarice, and such practices as are [234]scandalous in an emperor. Having [235]settled his affairs with the [236]Germans, he triumphed at Rome. He put to death his sister Lucilla, who, with [237]several others, had [238]conspired against his life. He [239]used to [240]fight among the [241]gladiators in the [242]public games. He was at last, after an [243]infamous life, [244]slain by the [245]contrivance of a [246]mistress, and the captain-general of his [247]life-guards, whom he had [248]determined to [249]put to death. He reigned twelve years, nine months, and fourteen days.

After Commodus was [250]killed in the year of Christ 193, P. [251]Helvius Pertinax, was [252]declared emperor, by those who had [253]dispatched Commodus, who [254]endeavouring to [255]reduce the [256]commonwealth into better [257]order, and to [258]curb the [259]licentiousness of the [260]soldiery, was, within eighty days after his coming to the empire, [261]murdered by his own guards. The empire after this, was by the soldiers [262]exposed to [263]sale, and Didius Julianus [264]coming up to their [265]terms, was [266]accepted of, and [267]proclaimed emperor accordingly. But [268]not being able to [269]make up the [270]promised donative, he was [271]forsaken by them, and slain by [272]order of Septimius Severus, after he had reigned two months and five days. [162]

This Severus, a [273]native of Africa, was at that time lieutenant of Pannonia, and [274]took upon him the government, under the [275]pretence of [276]revenging Pertinax's death. He first of all [277]disbanded the guards for that [278]abominable [279]murder. Then he [280]fell upon Pescennius Niger, lieutenant of Syria, and Clodius Albinus of [281]Britain, his [282]competitor for the empire. Niger was [283]conquered, and Antioch, into which he [284]threw himself, was taken; after which, [285]flying towards the [286]river Euphrates, he was [287]taken and slain. After the [288]taking off of Niger, Severus [289]took [290]Byzantium, which had [291]declared for him, after a [292]siege of three years.

[293]Matters being [294]brought to a [295]peaceable [296]settlement in the [297]East, he [298]turned his arms [299]westward against Clodius Albinus, and [300]engaged him at [301]Lyons in [302]France; [163]

where many being slain on both [303]sides, and amongst others, Albinus, he was [304]left sole [305]possessor of the empire. The city was [306]plundered and [307]burnt, Albinus's [308]head [309]sent to Rome, and a [310]dreadful [311]havoc made among those who had been his [312]favourers and [313]friends.

After this, he [314]marched [315]eastward again, and [316]conquered the Parthians, the [317]Adiabeniensians, and Arabians, whilst Plotianus, in the mean time, [318]governed all at Rome. Plotilla, this man's daughter, was [319]contracted to Antoninus, Severus's son, and the [320]nuptials were [321]celebrated in the tenth year of Severus's reign. But not long after, Plotianus being [322]engaged in a [323]plot against the emperor, was slain by his [324]son-in-law, and a great many that had been in his [325]interest, killed after him.

Severus [326]undertook an [327]expedition into Britain, with his two sons, in the 15th year of his reign, where he [328]continued three years; being very [329]successful, he [330]drew a [331]wall [332]across the [333]island for its [334]security. He died at York, after he had reigned seventeen years eight months and three days.

[335]Antoninus Caracalla and Geta, the two sons of Severus, were after him [336]advanced to the empire, in the year of Christ 211. But the [337]difference of their [338]humour and [339]manners was such, that they were [340]perpetually at [341]variance. Geta was of a [342]mild and civil [343]temper, the other [344]cruel and [345]boisterous, who, in the second year of his reign, [346]slew his brother in his [347]mother's [348]bosom. After him, a great many of his friends and [349]favourers were [350]put to death, amongst whom the [351]famous [352]lawyer [353]Papinian, because he would not [354]justify his [355]parricide. After this, he [356]marched into the [357]East. At Alexandria he made a [358]shocking [359]massacre of the [360]inhabitants, for having some time before made some [361]jests upon him. He then [362]invaded [363]Artabanus, king of the Parthians, and [364]laid waste his [365]dominions. He was [366]killed by the [367]contrivance of Opilius Macrinus after he had reigned six years and two months.

Macrinus [368]enjoyed the empire but a short time; for he and his sons were slain by the [369]soldiers within a year and two months after he obtained it: and was [370]succeeded by [371]Antoninus Heliogabalus, [372]supposed, but [373]falsely, to be the son of Caracalla. He was the [374]vilest [375]wretch that ever lived, [376]given up to all manner of [377]vice. Wherefore, after a reign of three years, and nine months, he was slain by the [378]soldiery, with his mother Julia, or Semiamira.

After this, [379]M. Aurelius Alexander [380]mounted the throne, having been [381]created Cæsar the year before; an [382]extraordinary prince, and well [383]instructed in all the [384]arts of [385]peace and war. He [386]carried a strict hand over the [387]judges, and was very [388]severe upon all those that by [389]favour or [390]bribery [391]transgressed the [392]bounds of [393]justice. He [394]banished from his [395]person all [396]flatterers, [397]buffoons, and such as are a [398]scandal to the [399]court. He [400]forbade the [401]sale of [402]offices, saying, that what was [403]bought would be [404]sold again. He [405]allowed the [406]deputies of the [407]provinces all their [408]furniture out of the [409]exchequer, that they might not be [410]burdensome to the people. He was [411]successful against the Persians, but at last slain in a [412]sedition of his army.

In the fifth year of his reign, [413]Artaxerxes, [414]the Persian, having [415]defeated the Parthians in three [416]battles, and slain their king Artabanus, [417]raised again the empire of the Persians in the East. He also made an [418]excursion into the Roman [419]territories, but was defeated by Alexander. After this, he [420]undertook an [421]expedition against the Germans, in which he was slain by Maximinus, together with his mother, after a reign of thirteen years.

Maximinus was made emperor after the [422]murder of Alexander, and [423]put a happy end to the German war. In the mean time he made a [424]dreadful [425]havoc at Rome, by his governor there, and killed a great many of the [426]nobility. During this, the two [427]Gordians, father and son, while at [428]Carthage, [429]laid claim to the empire. The Romans, being [430]headed by the senate, [431]declared against Maximinus; and [432]persons were [433]dispatched away to [434]secure the provinces for the senate. At home, twenty [435]commissioners were [436]nominated for the [437]management of public [438]affairs. The Gordians being [439]killed in Africa, after a year and a few days, by [440]Capelian, Maximinus's general, [441]Balbinus and [442]Maximus Pupienus, two of the [443]twenty [444]commissioners, were [445]advanced to the empire by the senate in the year of

[164]

[165]

[166]

Christ 237; in which Maximinus, as he was [446]besieging Aquileia, was slain by the [447]soldiers with his son, who was but a [448]boy, after a reign of two years and ten months.

Balbinus and Pupienus, with Gordian ([449]a boy, who, as will be seen [450]hereafter, [451]perished in Africa), reigned together for a year. But afterwards being [452]desirous to [453]get rid of Gordian, who was more in [454]favour than themselves, they were slain by the soldiers in the year of Christ 238; from which time Gordian [455]enjoyed the empire by himself, a [456]youth of an [457]extraordinary [458]genius, and [459]prone to all manner of virtue; which was [460]improved by the [461]prudence of Mithreus, a very [462]learned and [463]eloquent man, whose daughter he [464]married; with whom he [465]marched at the [466]head of the great army against the Persians, and [467]recovered from them [468]Carræ, [469]Nisibis, and other towns, and [470]forced them back into their own [471]country. The year [472]following, Mithreus being [473]murdered by the [474]contrivance of [475]Philip the Arabian, Gordian himself was soon after slain in a [476]tumult, which the same Philip [477]raised by the [478]help of some soldiers he had [479]corrupted, after he had reigned six years, in whose [480]place the [481]parricide [482]succeeded.

[167]

In the fourth year of Philip's reign, the [483]Secular games were [484]celebrated at Rome, in the [485]thousandth year of the city. He was [486]at last [487]slain at Verona, by the soldiers, in the sixth year of his [488]reign.

Decius, [489]born in [490]Lower Pannonia, a man of great [491]courage and [492]experience in war, [493]succeeded him. He [494]perished in a [495]morass in a battle against the [496]Barbarians. This [497]defeat was [498]occasioned by the [499]treachery of Gallus, who [500]secretly [501]caballed with the enemy after he had reigned thirty months. This Gallus being made emperor by the [502]choice of the [503]soldiery, and having [504]taken his son as a [505]partner in the [506]government, was slain together with him by the soldiers, two years and four months after at Interamna, as he was [507]marching against Æmilian, who was [508]raising a [509]rebellion in Mœtia.

[168]

Æmilian did not reign long, being slain three months after his [510]advancement, and was [511]succeeded by Valerian, with his son Gallienus, who reigned six years together; during which time the Roman empire was [512]miserably [513]rent by the Barbarians. Thirty [514]tyrants [515]started up in several [516]places, according to [517]Trebellius Pollio. Wherefore Valerian [518]marching against the [519]Scythians, who had [520]taken [521]Chalcedon, [522]burnt Nice, and the [523]temple of the [524]Ephesian Diana, and from thence [525]advancing against Sapore, who [526]was very troublesome to the [527]Eastern [528]borders, he [529]took him [530]prisoner, and [531]treated him like a vile [532]slave; for when he [533]mounted his [534]horse, he [535]set his [536]foot upon his [537]neck, who [538]bowed down [539]for that purpose. At last he [540]ordered him to be [541]flayed and [542]salted. This [543]victory over the Romans [544]happened in the year of Christ 260. After which Odenatus, a senator of the [545]Palmyrenians, whom Zenobia had [546]married, [547]bravely [548]repulsed the Persians that still [549]harassed the [550]borders.

[551]In the mean time Gallienus, wholly [552]given up to [553]luxury and [554]debauchery, [555]suffered the empire to be [556]torn to pieces by the Barbarians, and [557]tyrants. Odenatus, after the [558]taking of Nisibis and Carræ, and the [559]recovery of Mesopotamia, [560]upon routing of the king of the Persians, having [561]sent the great [562]lords of the Persians to him in [563]chains, he was [564]not ashamed to [565]triumph, as if he had [566]conquered them himself. Odenatus was [567]murdered by his [568]cousin, together with his son Herod, whose [569]wife Zenobia, being a [570]woman of a [571]masculine spirit, [572]undertook the government. Gallienus was slain with his brother Valerian at [573]Milan, as he was marching against Aureolus the tyrant. He reigned almost seven years with his father, and eight alone.

[169]

Claudius [574]succeeded him; a [575]frugal and [576]moderate prince, and very [577]serviceable to the public, who having [578]taken off the tyrant Aureolus, was very [579]successful against the [580]Goths, of whom he [581]slew 320,000, and [582]sunk 200 of their [583]ships. The rest of the Barbarians were [584]consumed at [585]Hæmimontium by [586]famine and [587]pestilence; and soon after Claudius [588]died of the same [589]plague, after a reign of one year and nine months.

His brother Quintilius [590]usurping the empire, was slain by the soldiers ten days after, who had now [591]made choice of Aurelian, a person of [592]mean birth, but [593]reckoned amongst the most [594]glorious princes, only rather too [595]cruel. He [596]subdued the Alemanni and Marcomanni, from whom the Romans had before [597]received a [598]signal [599]overthrow. After

[170]

that victory he [600]came to Rome, [601]put several of the [602]senators to death, and [603]enlarged the [604]walls of the city. Then marching [605]eastward, he conquered Zenobia, whom with the tyrant [606]Tetrachus, he [607]led in [608]triumph. [609]Aurelius Victor tells us, he was the first of the Roman emperors who [610]wore a [611]diadem on his [612]head, or [613]used [614]jewels and [615]cloth of [616]gold. He was [617]taken off by [618]Mnestheus, a [619]notary to the [620]secretaries at [621]Cænophrurium, [622]betwixt [623]Byzantium and Heraclea. After his [624]death, there was an [625]interregnum of about seven months, [626]occasioned by a [627]dispute between the senate and the army, about the [628]choice of an emperor; at length Tacitus was [629]chosen by the senate, a person of [630]excellent [631]morals, and very [632]fit for the [633]government, he was [634]descended from Tacitus the [635]historian; and he [636]died of a [637]fever six months after at Tarsus. His brother Florianus [638]succeeded him: but Probus being [639]set up by a [640]majority of the army, Florianus [641]bled himself to death, two months after his brother died, in the year of Christ 276.

This Probus was [642]born in Pannonia Sirmiensis, a very fine man, and an excellent [643]soldier, of [644]unspotted morals. [645]As soon as he was [646]made emperor, he [647]punished all those who [648]had a hand in the death of Aurelian. After that, he [649]marched to [650]Gaul, [651]recovered several towns out of the [652]hands of the [653]Barbarians, and [654]slew nearly 70,000 of them. After [655]reducing [656]Gaul, he recovered [657]Illyricum, and [658]subdued the people [659]called the [660]Getæ; then going into the [661]East, he [662]fell upon the [663]Persians; when having [664]defeated them, and [665]taken several towns, he was [666]slain on his [667]return to Italy, by the soldiers, at [668]Sirmium, who [669]hated him for his great [670]severity. This [671]happened in the seventh year of his [672]reign, and the 282nd of Christ.

Probus was [673]succeeded by M. Aurelius Carus, [674]born at [675]Narbon in France, who [676]immediately [677]made his sons Carinus, and Numerianus, [678]Cæsars; and having [679]sent Carinus to [680]take the care of Gaul, he [681]marched into the [682]East against the Persians with Numerianus; where, after he had [683]reduced Mesopotamia, and marched as far as [684]Ctesiphon, he was [685]struck dead by [686]lightning, having [687]reigned about a year. Numerianus being much [688]concerned for his father's death, [689]contracted a [690]weakness in his [691]eyes with [692]weeping, and was [693]slain by the [694]contrivance of Aper his [695]father-in-law.

Carinus was nothing [696]like his father and brother, being [697]guilty of all [698]manner of [699]wickedness; [700]wherefore he was [701]odious to all [702]ranks of [703]people. He was [704]betrayed by his own army at [705]Margum in Mœsia, and [706]killed by the soldiers of Dioclesian, who, as soon as Numerianus was [707]dead, [708]accepted of the [709]purple [710]offered him by the army, being born of [711]mean parents in [712]Dalmatia (for [713]he is said to have been the [714]slave of [715]Anulinus the senator), but a [716]gallant soldier. He [717]took his [718]oath in an [719]assembly of the soldiers, that he [720]had no hand in the death of Numerianus, and upon that [721]slew Aper with his own [722]hand; and so [723]fulfilled the [724]prophecy of him, that he should be emperor, when he had killed a [725]boar with his own hand; for which reason [726]as often as he [727]met with a boar, he [728]used to kill him. After he had killed Aper, he said he had [729]found the fatal boar. He [730]suppressed the [731]boars who made an [732]insurrection in Gaul, and [733]called themselves Bacaudæ, by means of [734]Maximianus Herculus, whom he [735]sent thither [736]for that purpose in the year 285, in which this Herculus was first made Cæsar, and the year [737]following he was made Augustus. About the same time Carausius having [738]seized upon [739]Britain, and Achilleus in [740]Egypt, [741]pretended to the empire; and in the [742]East, Narses king of Persia, being [743]ready to [744]fall upon the Romans, and Africa being [745]wasted by the [746]Quinquegentians, the better to [747]conduct all these wars at once, he [748]created Constantius Chlorus, and Galerius Maximianus, Cæsars. The latter was [749]born in Dacia, not far from Sardica, and was [750]surnamed [751]Armentarius, because he had been a [752]herdsman. Dioclesian [753]gave his daughter Valeria to Armentarius, and Maximianus Herculus [754]disposed of his step-daughter Theodora to Constantius. After this, Dioclesian [755]went to Egypt, Herculus into Africa, Armentarius into the East, and Constantius into Britain. Alexandria was [756]taken by Dioclesian, after a [757]siege of eight months, in the twelfth year of his reign. Ceransius was [758]killed by his friend [759]Alectus, eight years after his [760]revolt. At the same time the Quinquegentians were [761]reduced by Maximianus Herculus: and Galerius Armentarius [762]defeated by Narsus, being [763]haughtily [764]received by Dioclesian, he the year following 297, [765]revenged this [766]disgrace, by [767]routing the Persian army, and [768]taking the [769]wives, [770]sisters, and [771]children of Narsus prisoners; upon which Dioclesian received him [772]honourably in

[171]

[172]

[173]

Mesopotamia.

At length, after a [773]splendid [774]triumph, Dioclesian and Herculius [775]laid down their [776]authority; the former did it [777]by choice, and [778]retired to Salonæ; the other was [779]prevailed upon more by the [780]authority of his [781]colleague, than from any [782]inclination for it. This [783]happened in the 20th of Dioclesian, and 304th year of Christ; upon which [784]Constantius Chlorus, and [785]Galerius Maximianus Armentarius, were [786]proclaimed emperors; Severus, and Galerius Maximianus, the [787]nephew of Armentarius by a sister, were [788]declared Cæsars. Constantius [789]divided the Roman empire with Maximian, [790]keeping to himself Gaul, Italy, and Africa; but the two [791]last he afterwards [792]left to his colleague, who had besides [793]Illyricum, Asia, and the [794]East. Of this he made Maximianus [795]governor, and [796]placed Severus in Italy.

[174]

FOOTNOTES

- [1] *Coccéjo Nerva*
- [2] *eccellénte*
- [3] *sprezzáto*
- [4] *annulláre*
- [5] *atto*
- [6] *restituíre*
- [7] *preso*
- [8] *violénza*
- [9] *ingiustízia*
- [10] *mancáre*
- [11] *autorità*
- [12] *tenére*
- [13] *dovére*
- [14] *avér parte*
- [15] *ricevúto*
- [16] *uccíso*
- [17] *guárdia*
- [18] *ad onta di*
- [19] *impedíre*
- [20] *luogotenénte*
- [21] *adottáto*
- [22] *pigliáre*
- [23] *govérno*
- [24] *Cológna*
- [25] *ottimaménte*
- [26] *versáto*
- [27] *arte militáre*
- [28] *moderazióne*
- [29] *dolce*
- [30] *temperamento*
- [31] *meritáre*
- [32] *sopranome*
- [33] *Óttimo*
- [34] *aggiúngere*
- [35] *marciáre*
- [36] *Levánte*
- [37] *soggiogáre*
- [38] *Armeni*

- [39] *Ibérj*
- [40] *Colchi*
- [41] *Sármati*
- [42] *Osroéni*
- [43] *Árabi*
- [44] *Bosforáni*
- [45] *attaccáre*
- [46] *préndere*
- [47] *Tesifóne*
- [48] *Babilónia*
- [49] *fare un viággio*
- [50] *per il mar rosso*
- [51] *ribellársi*
- [52] *presto*
- [53] *ridúrre*
- [54] *luogotenénte*
- [55] *terremóto*
- [56] *rovináre*
- [57] *Ántíochia*
- [58] *succédere*
- [59] *consoláto*
- [60] *seppellíto*
- [61] *rovína*
- [62] *piázza*
- [63] *tiráto*
- [64] *finéstra*
- [65] *molta difficoltà*
- [66] *scappáre*
- [67] *Siréne*
- [68] *prénder le armi*
- [69] *esercitáre*
- [70] *crudeltà*
- [71] *Egíttó*
- [72] *Cipro*
- [73] *sopprímere*
- [74] *strage*
- [75] *mentre*
- [76] *preparársi*
- [77] *scacciato*
- [78] *dato*
- [79] *ammalársi*
- [80] *moríre*
- [81] *Selíno*
- [82] *Elio Adriáno*
- [83] *cugíno*
- [84] *compatrióttó*
- [85] *ottenére*
- [86] *favóre*
- [87] *mutábile*
- [88] *natúra*

- [89] *génio*
[90] *ugualménte*
[91] *formato*
[92] *vizio*
[93] *andáre*
[94] *província*
[95] *viaggiáre*
[96] *mondo*
[97] *cédere*
[98] *disegnáre*
[99] *lasciáre*
[100] *temúto*
[101] *rovináre*
[102] *riedificáre*
[103] *chiamáre*
[104] *stabilíre*
[105] *témpio*
[106] *situáto*
[107] *edificáre*
[108] *onóre*
[109] *Gióve*
[110] *irritáre*
[111] *pigliár l'armi*
[112] *fare*
[113] *fúria*
[114] *condóttá*
[115] *sperimentáto*
[116] *impiegáre*
[117] *far veníre*
[118] *Brettágná*
[119] *gradualménte*
[120] *soppréssó*
[121] *distrútto*
[122] *innumerábile*
[123] *moltitúdine*
[124] *consumáto*
[125] *fame*
[126] *peste*
[127] *fuóco*
[128] *Palestína*
[129] *desérto*
[130] *proibíto*
[131] *sotto pena di morte*
[132] *compiángere*
[133] *miséria*
[134] *diveníre vécchio*
[135] *inférmo*
[136] *figliuólo*
[137] *adottáre*
[138] *Árrio Antoníno*

- [139] *cognominato*
- [140] *Pio*
- [141] *con patto*
- [142] *M. Aurélio Antonino*
- [143] *governáre*
- [144] *benignità*
- [145] *sorpassáre*
- [146] *esémpio*
- [147] *maneggiáre*
- [148] *repúbbrica*
- [149] *affezióne*
- [150] *tenére*
- [151] *pace*
- [152] *ragióne*
- [153] *comparáto*
- [154] *straniéro*
- [155] *remóto*
- [156] *nazióne*
- [157] *temére*
- [158] *riméttere*
- [159] *decisióne*
- [160] *controvérsia*
- [161] *proibíre*
- [162] *scrutinio*
- [163] *entráre*
- [164] *cospirazióne*
- [165] *vita*
- [166] *género*
- [167] *gioventù*
- [168] *educáto*
- [169] *conoscénza*
- [170] *arte*
- [171] *stúdio*
- [172] *sapiénza*
- [173] *mostrare*
- [174] *condótta*
- [175] *paróla*
- [176] *professione*
- [177] *princípio*
- [178] *compágno*
- [179] *differénte*
- [180] *inclinazióne*
- [181] *pigro*
- [182] *lussurióso*
- [183] *fastidióso*
- [184] *tenúto*
- [185] *moderazióne*
- [186] *rispétto*
- [187] *mandáto*
- [188] *fare*

[189] *con buon successo*
[190] *trionfáre*
[191] *intrapréndere*
[192] *spedizióne*
[193] *márcia*
[194] *assalíto*
[195] *apopléssia*
[196] *Altíno*
[197] *Vándali*
[198] *Sarmáti*
[199] *unírsi*
[200] *necessità*
[201] *acqua*
[202] *soccorso*
[203] *legióne*
[204] *Cristiáno*
[205] *preghiéra*
[206] *procuráre*
[207] *pióggia*
[208] *ciélo*
[209] *Eusébio*
[210] *erário*
[211] *vuoto*
[212] *spesa*
[213] *caricáre*
[214] *dazio*
[215] *mise fuori*
[216] *forniménto*
[217] *véndere*
[218] *restituíre*
[219] *prezzo*
[220] *compratóre*
[221] *volére*
[222] *disfársi*
[223] *compráto*
[224] *falso avviso*
[225] *morto*
[226] *usurpáre*
[227] *govérno*
[228] *succedúto*
[229] *malvágio*
[230] *rassomigliáre*
[231] *crudeltà*
[232] *sensualità*
[233] *avarizia*
[234] *scandalóso*
[235] *regoláto*
[236] *Germáni*
[237] *parécchi*
[238] *cospiráto*

[239] *solére*
[240] *battérsi*
[241] *gladiatóre*
[242] *giuóchi púbblici*
[243] *infáme*
[244] *uccíso*
[245] *arte*
[246] *amorósa*
[247] *guárdie del corpo*
[248] *risolúto*
[249] *méttere*
[250] *ammazzáto*
[251] *Elvio Pertináce*
[252] *dichiaráto*
[253] *spacciáto*
[254] *procuráre*
[255] *ridúrre*
[256] *repúbbrica*
[257] *órdine*
[258] *reprímere*
[259] *licénza*
[260] *soldatésca*
[261] *assassináto*
[262] *espórre*
[263] *vendita*
[264] *componendosi colle*
[265] *condizioni*
[266] *accettáto*
[267] *proclamáto*
[268] *potere*
[269] *fornire*
[270] *donatívo premésso*
[271] *abbandonáto*
[272] *órdine*
[273] *natívo*
[274] *préndere*
[275] *pretéstó*
[276] *vendicáre*
[277] *licenziáre*
[278] *abbominevole*
[279] *assassinío*
[280] *attaccáre*
[281] *Brettagna*
[282] *competitóre*
[283] *vinto*
[284] *ritirarsi*
[285] *fuggíre*
[286] *fíúme Eufráte*
[287] *preso*
[288] *presa*

[289] *prendere*
[290] *Bisánzio*
[291] *dichiaráto*
[292] *assédio*
[293] *le cose*
[294] *condótto*
[295] *pacífico*
[296] *accomodaménto*
[297] *Levánte*
[298] *voltáre*
[299] *verso l'occidénte*
[300] *attaccáre*
[301] *Lióne*
[302] *Fráncia*
[303] *canto*
[304] *lasciáto*
[305] *possessóre*
[306] *saccheggiáto*
[307] *abbrucchiáto*
[308] *testa*
[309] *mandáto*
[310] *orribile*
[311] *strage*
[312] *fautóre*
[313] *amíco*
[314] *marciáre*
[315] *verso il levánte*
[316] *conquistáre*
[317] *Adiabeniáni*
[318] *governáre*
[319] *fidanzáto*
[320] *nozze*
[321] *celebráto*
[322] *impegnáto*
[323] *cospirazióne*
[324] *género*
[325] *partito*
[326] *intrapréndere*
[327] *spedizióne*
[328] *continuáre*
[329] *fortunáto*
[330] *tiráre*
[331] *muro*
[332] *attravérso*
[333] *ísola*
[334] *sicurézza*
[335] *Antoníno Caracálla*
[336] *alzáto*
[337] *differénza*
[338] *umóre*

- [339] *costúme*
[340] *perpetuaménte*
[341] *in lite*
[342] *benígno*
[343] *naturale*
[344] *crudéle*
[345] *impetuóso*
[346] *uccidere*
[347] *madre*
[348] *seno*
[349] *partitánte*
[350] *nesso*
[351] *célebre*
[352] *giuriconsulto*
[353] *Papiniáno*
[354] *giustificáre*
[355] *parricídio*
[356] *marciáre*
[357] *levánte*
[358] *orríbile*
[359] *strage*
[360] *abitánte*
[361] *burla*
[362] *attaccare*
[363] *Artabáno*
[364] *desoláre*
[365] *domínio*
[366] *ucciso*
[367] *arte*
[368] *godére*
[369] *soldáto*
[370] *succedúto*
[371] *Antonino Eliogábalo*
[372] *suppósto*
[373] *falsaménte*
[374] *vile*
[375] *scelleráto*
[376] *abbandonáto*
[377] *vizio*
[378] *soldatésca*
[379] *M. Aurélio Alessáandro*
[380] *ascéndere*
[381] *creáto*
[382] *straordináριο*
[383] *istrútto*
[384] *arte*
[385] *pace*
[386] *comportársi rigorosaménte*
[387] *giúdice*
[388] *sevéro*

[389] *favóre*
[390] *corruzióne*
[391] *uscíre*
[392] *términe*
[393] *giustízia*
[394] *bandíre*
[395] *persóna*
[396] *adulatóre*
[397] *buffóne*
[398] *disdoro*
[399] *corte*
[400] *proibíre*
[401] *véndita*
[402] *uffizio*
[403] *compráto*
[404] *rivendúto*
[405] *concédere*
[406] *deputáto*
[407] *província*
[408] *móbili*
[409] *erário*
[410] *a carico al*
[411] *fortunáto*
[412] *sedizióne*
[413] *Artasérse*
[414] *il Persiáno*
[415] *sconfitto*
[416] *battáglia*
[417] *rialzáre*
[418] *scorrería*
[419] *território*
[420] *intrapréndere*
[421] *spedizióne*
[422] *assassínio*
[423] *termináre felicemente*
[424] *spaventévole*
[425] *strage*
[426] *nobilità*
[427] *Gordiáni*
[428] *CartáGINE*
[429] *pretendere*
[430] *comandáto*
[431] *dichiarársi*
[432] *persóna*
[433] *spedito*
[434] *assicurársi*
[435] *commissário*
[436] *nomináto*
[437] *governo*
[438] *affáre*

[439] *ucciso*
[440] *Capeliáno Massimíno*
[441] *Balbíno*
[442] *Mássimo Pupiéno*
[443] *venti*
[444] *commissário*
[445] *alzáto*
[446] *assediáre*
[447] *soldáto*
[448] *ragázzo*
[449] *ràgazzo*
[450] *poi*
[451] *períre*
[452] *desideróso*
[453] *disfársi*
[454] *grázia*
[455] *godére*
[456] *gióvine*
[457] *straordinário*
[458] *génio*
[459] *inclináto*
[460] *coltiváto*
[461] *prudenza*
[462] *sapiente*
[463] *eloquénte*
[464] *sposáre*
[465] *marciáre*
[466] *testa*
[467] *ricuperáre*
[468] *Carréa*
[469] *Nísibi*
[470] *rispígnere*
[471] *paese*
[472] *seguénte*
[473] *ucciso*
[474] *insidia*
[475] *Filíppo l'Árabo*
[476] *tumúlto*
[477] *suscitáre*
[478] *assisténza*
[479] *corróto*
[480] *luógo*
[481] *parricída*
[482] *succédere*
[483] *giuochi secolári*
[484] *celebráto*
[485] *millésimo*
[486] *finalménte*
[487] *ammazzáto*
[488] *regno*

[489] *nato*
[490] *basso*
[491] *corággio*
[492] *speriénza*
[493] *succédere*
[494] *períre*
[495] *palúde*
[496] *bábaro*
[497] *sconfitta*
[498] *cagionáto*
[499] *perfídia*
[500] *nascostaménte*
[501] *congiuráre*
[502] *scelta*
[503] *soldatésca*
[504] *preso*
[505] *compáгно*
[506] *govérno*
[507] *marciáre*
[508] *suscitáre*
[509] *ribellíone*
[510] *avanzaménto*
[511] *succedúto*
[512] *miserabilménte*
[513] *laceráto*
[514] *tiránno*
[515] *sollevársi*
[516] *luógo*
[517] *Trebéllio Pollióne*
[518] *marciáre*
[519] *Sciti*
[520] *preso*
[521] *Calcedónia*
[522] *abbruciáto*
[523] *témpio*
[524] *Efesino*
[525] *avanzáre*
[526] *inquietava assai*
[527] *orientále*
[528] *frontiere*
[529] *fare*
[530] *prigioniéro*
[531] *trattáre*
[532] *schíavo*
[533] *montáre*
[534] *caváлло*
[535] *porre*
[536] *piéde*
[537] *collo*
[538] *abbassársi*

[539] *a questo effétto*
[540] *fare*
[541] *scorticáre*
[542] *saláre*
[543] *vittória*
[544] *succédere*
[545] *Palmiriáni*
[546] *sposáto*
[547] *coraggiosaménte*
[548] *rispígnere*
[549] *dare il guasto*
[550] *confíne*
[551] *Intanto*
[552] *abbandonáto*
[553] *lussúria*
[554] *dissolutézza*
[555] *lasciáre*
[556] *laceráre in pezzi*
[557] *tiráno*
[558] *presa*
[559] *recuperaménto*
[560] *dopo la sconfitta*
[561] *mandáto*
[562] *signóre*
[563] *caténa*
[564] *vergógna*
[565] *trionfare*
[566] *vincere*
[567] *assassináto*
[568] *cugíno*
[569] *moglie*
[570] *donna*
[571] *ánimo virile*
[572] *intrapréndere*
[573] *Miláno*
[574] *succédere*
[575] *frugale*
[576] *moderáto*
[577] *serviziévole*
[578] *uccíso*
[579] *fortunáto*
[580] *Goti*
[581] *uccídere*
[582] *affondáre*
[583] *nave*
[584] *distrútto*
[585] *Emimónzio*
[586] *fame*
[587] *pestilénza*
[588] *moríre*

[589] *peste*
[590] *usurpáre*
[591] *scegliere*
[592] *bassa náscita*
[593] *annoveráto*
[594] *glorióso*
[595] *crudéle*
[596] *soggiogáre*
[597] *ricevúto*
[598] *segnaláto*
[599] *sconfítta*
[600] *veníre*
[601] *méttere*
[602] *senatóre*
[603] *ampliáre*
[604] *muro*
[605] *verso l'oriénte*
[606] *Tétrico*
[607] *condúrre*
[608] *trióngo*
[609] *Aurélío Vittóre*
[610] *portáre*
[611] *diadéma*
[612] *capo*
[613] *servírsi*
[614] *giója*
[615] *panno*
[616] *oro*
[617] *tolto di vita*
[618] *Nestéo*
[619] *notáro*
[620] *secretáριο*
[621] *Cenofrúrio*
[622] *tra*
[623] *Bisánzio*
[624] *morte*
[625] *interrégno*
[626] *cagionáto*
[627] *dispúta*
[628] *scelta*
[629] *scelto*
[630] *eccellénte*
[631] *costúme*
[632] *capáce*
[633] *govérno*
[634] *discéso*
[635] *istóricó*
[636] *moríre*
[637] *febbre*
[638] *succédere*

[639] *innalzato*
[640] *pluralità*
[641] *si aprì le vene a morte*
[642] *nato*
[643] *soldato*
[644] *intatta probità*
[645] *súbito che*
[646] *fatto*
[647] *punire*
[648] *essere complice*
[649] *marciare*
[650] *Gállia*
[651] *ricuperare*
[652] *potere*
[653] *barbáro*
[654] *ammazzare*
[655] *riduzione*
[656] *Gállia*
[657] *Illírico*
[658] *soggiogare*
[659] *chiamato*
[660] *Geti*
[661] *Levante*
[662] *attaccare*
[663] *Persiano*
[664] *sconfitto*
[665] *preso*
[666] *ucciso*
[667] *ritorna*
[668] *Sírmio*
[669] *odiare*
[670] *severità*
[671] *succedere*
[672] *regno*
[673] *successo*
[674] *nato*
[675] *Narbóna*
[676] *súbito*
[677] *fare*
[678] *Césare*
[679] *mandato*
[680] *aver cura*
[681] *marciare*
[682] *Levante*
[683] *ridotto*
[684] *Tesifone*
[685] *ammazzato*
[686] *fúlmine*
[687] *regnato*
[688] *afflitto*

[689] *contrarre*
[690] *debolezza*
[691] *ócchio*
[692] *piangere*
[693] *ucciso*
[694] *arte*
[695] *suócero*
[696] *rassomigliáre*
[697] *colpévole*
[698] *sorta*
[699] *scelleratezza*
[700] *perciò*
[701] *odióso*
[702] *stato*
[703] *gente*
[704] *tradíto*
[705] *Margo*
[706] *ammazzáto*
[707] *morto*
[708] *accettáre*
[709] *pórpora*
[710] *offérto*
[711] *bassi parenti*
[712] *Dalmázia*
[713] *si dice che*
[714] *schíavo*
[715] *Anulino*
[716] *bravo*
[717] *pigliáre*
[718] *giuraménto*
[719] *Assembléa*
[720] *éssere cómplíce*
[721] *uccídere*
[722] *mano*
[723] *adempíre*
[724] *profezía*
[725] *cignéle*
[726] *ogni volta che*
[727] *incontráre*
[728] *solére*
[729] *trováto*
[730] *sopprímere*
[731] *Villano*
[732] *rivólta*
[733] *chiamársi*
[734] *Massimíano Erculío*
[735] *mandáre*
[736] *a questo effétto*
[737] *seguénte*
[738] *impadroníto*

- [739] *Brettáña*
[740] *Egíto*
[741] *preténdere*
[742] *Levánte*
[743] *pronto*
[744] *attaccáre*
[745] *desoláto*
[746] *Quinquegenziáni*
[747] *spingere*
[748] *creáre*
[749] *nato*
[750] *cognomináto*
[751] *Armentáριο*
[752] *pastóre*
[753] *dare*
[754] *accordáre*
[755] *andáre*
[756] *preso*
[757] *assédio*
[758] *ammazzáto*
[759] *Alétto*
[760] *rivólta*
[761] *ridótto*
[762] *sconfitto*
[763] *alteraménte*
[764] *ricevúto*
[765] *emendáre*
[766] *disgrázia*
[767] *sconfiggere*
[768] *fare*
[769] *moglie*
[770] *sorélla*
[771] *figliuolo*
[772] *onorataménte*
[773] *spléndido*
[774] *trióngo*
[775] *rinunziáre*
[776] *autorità*
[777] *spontaneaménte*
[778] *ritirársi*
[779] *dispósto*
[780] *autorità*
[781] *collega*
[782] *inclinazióne*
[783] *succédere*
[784] *Costánzo Cloro*
[785] *Galério Massimiáno Armentáριο*
[786] *proclamáto*
[787] *nipóte*
[788] *dichiaráto*

[789]	<i>spartíre</i>
[790]	<i>tenérsi</i>
[791]	<i>último</i>
[792]	<i>lasciáre</i>
[793]	<i>Illírico</i>
[794]	<i>Levánte</i>
[795]	<i>governatóre</i>
[796]	<i>collocáre</i>

CHAP. X.

(*Of Rome, 1044—Of Christ, 304.*)

Constantius Chlorus having [1]enjoyed his [2]dignity one year, or as most [3]will have it, two years, [4]died at York. He was [5]mild and [6]civil in his [7]disposition; he would [8]suffer no [9]enquiry to be made after the [10]Christians, and [11]preferred such of his [12]servants as he [13]knew to be of that [14]profession before the [15]rest.

Constantine, his son, [16]began his [17]reign in the year of Christ 306, being 32 or 33 years of age, [18]born of [19]Helen of Bithynia, whom, most [20]authors say, was not, but some, that she was, the [21]lawful [22]wife of Constantius, though of [23]mean [24]birth.

At Rome, [25]Maxentius, the son of [26]Herculius, was [27]proclaimed emperor, by the [28]prætorian [29]bands: he, at first, to [30]gain the [31]people, [32]seemed to [33]favour the [34]Christians; but [35]presently after [36]wallowed in all [37]manner of [38]wickedness and [39]cruelty. Galerius Maximianus [40]sent Severus against him, who, being [41]forsaken by his men, [42]fled to Ravenna; Galerius, upon this, [43]marching for Rome, with his [44]army, was [45]likewise forsaken by his men, and went into [46]Illyricum, where he [47]made Licinius Cæsar. Upon which Herculius [48]being now in hopes of [49]recovering the empire which he had [50]quitted against his [51]will, [52]returned from Lucania to Rome, and [53]advised [54]Dioclesian, [55]living at Carnus in Pannonia, by his [56]letters to him, to [57]do the like, which he [58]refused. He [59]trepanned Severus by [60]perjury, and [61]slew him. Then [62]laying a plot for his son, he was [63]forced to [64]fly from Rome to Constantine in Gaul, to whom he [65]gave his daughter Faustina in [66]marriage. But some time after, having [67]entered into a [68]wicked [69]design against his [70]son-in-law, Constantine, (which was [71]discovered by his daughter), he [72]fled to [73]Marseilles, and there [74]suffered the [75]punishment of his [76]treachery. About this time, Galerius Maximianus [77]died and was by his son-in-law Maxentius [78]enrolled amongst the [79]gods. [175]

In the year 312, [80]Constantine [81]marched against [82]Maxentius, and was [83]encouraged to it by the [84]prodigy of a [85]cross he [86]saw in the [87]heavens. Having [88]passed the [89]Alps, and [90]defeated his generals near Verona, he [91]routed Maxentius himself not far from Rome, who [92]flying over a [93]bridge he had [94]laid upon the [95]Tyber, it [96]broke under him, and he was [97]drowned. [176]

[98]Affairs being [99]settled in the city, Constantine in his [100]way to Germany, at Milan [101]married his sister [102]Constantia to Licinius, who had now been [103]made emperor. The same year Galerius Maximinus, a cruel [104]enemy of the [105]Christians, [106]undertaking a war against both the emperors, was [107]beaten by Licinius in [108]Illyricum, and [109]fled into Asia, where he [110]died a [111]horrible death at Tarsus in Cilicia. Nor did the [112]agreement betwixt the two [113]princes [114]last long; their first [115]re encounter was at Cibalis, a town in Pannonia; after which they had another [116]battle in the [117]plains of Mardia; in both which the [118]Licinians were [119]entirely defeated. At last a [120]peace was [121]made, and the empire again [122]divided.

In the year 324, Licinius [123]taking up arms against Constantine, [124]upon a pretence that he [125]went beyond his [126]bounds, and had [127]broken into his [128]dominions, received a great [129]overthrow near Hadrianople. [130]From thence flying into [131]Byzantium, he was again [132]defeated by [133]sea; and being [134]routed in another [135]battle near [136]Chalcedon, he was [137]taken prisoner by Constantine, from whom he [138]procured his life by the [139]interposition of his sister, and was [140]banished to [141]Thessalonica, where, [142]endeavouring to make a new [177]

[143]insurrection, he was [144]put to death.

After this, [145]Crispus Cæsar, his son, by a former [146]wife Minervina, a [147]youth of an [148]extraordinary [149]genius, was put to death upon [150]suspicion of [151]attempting to [152]seduce his [153]step-mother; and the year [154]following, Fausta, being [155]found [156]guilty of [157]falsely [158]accusing him, was [159]suffocated in a hot [160]bath, by [161]order of her [162]husband Constantine.

In this emperor's time, Byzantium was [163]rebuilt, and [164]enriched with the [165]spoils of almost the whole [166]world; so that it [167]equalled Rome, and [168]took its [169]name from its [170]restorer, being [171]called [172]Constantinople.

After this, having [173]subdued the [174]Sarmatians, and [175]disposed of them in several [176]places of the Roman [177]empire; Constantine died in the [178]suburbs of Nicomedia, where most [179]authors say he was [180]baptised a little before his [181]death.

He [182]left by Fausta, the daughter of Maximianus, three children, [183]heirs of the empire, who [184]divided it amongst them. Constantine the [185]eldest had [186]Gaul, and all [187]beyond the [188]Alps. [189]Constans the [190]youngest had Rome, Italy, Africa, Sicily, and the [191]rest of the [192]islands, Illyricum, [193]Thracia, Macedonia, and [194]Greece. Constantius, the [195]second son, Asia, and the [196]East, with [197]Egypt. [178]

But the brothers did not long [198]agree; four years after his father's [199]death, Constantine making war upon his brother Constans, and [200]invading his [201]territories, was [202]slain near Aquileia. Constans himself was slain ten years after by [203]Magnentius's general, Gaision, near the [204]Pyrenean mountains. Constantius was [205]engaged in a [206]dangerous war with this Magnentius. In the [207]battle [208]fought at Morsa in Pannonia, Constantius's army was [209]worsted in the first [210]attack, but at last [211]came off [212]victorious. Two years after this, Magnentius slew himself at Lyons in [213]despair.

Gallus was [214]declared Cæsar, and [215]governor of the East; but [216]abusing his [217]authority, he was [218]sent for by Constantius, and [219]put to death in Illyricum. [220]Julian, his brother, was [221]saved by the [222]interposition of Eusebia, Constantius's [223]wife, and sent to Athens to [224]study. He was afterwards [225]advanced to the [226]dignity of Cæsar, [227]married to the emperor's sister [228]Helen, and was [229]made governor of [230]Gaul, where he was very [231]successful against the [232]Germans, [233]Franks, and [234]Alemans; he [235]sent the [236]king of the Alemans a [237]prisoner to Constantius at Rome, who [238]envying his [239]success, [240]endeavoured to [241]draw his soldiers from him, and [242]send them into the [243]East against the Persians. But they [244]proclaimed Julian emperor at [245]Paris, [246]whilst Constantius was [247]preparing for a war against the Persians. [248]As soon as he [249]understood this, he [250]marched against Julian, but died on the [251]road near Tarsus. [179]

Julian, after the death of Constantius, was sole [252]master of the empire. He [253]killed, or [254]banished all the [255]friends of Constantius; [256]opened the [257]temples of the [258]idols, and [259]abjuring the [260]Christian [261]faith, was [262]consecrated [263]high-priest, [264]according to the [265]rites of the [266]pagan [267]religion. He made war against the Persians, and was [268]slain in it. They say that, when he [269]perceived his [270]wound to be [271]mortal, he [272]received the [273]blood in his [274]hand, and [275]threw it up [276]towards [277]heaven, with these [278]words: "Thou hast [279]conquered me, O [280]Galilæan!" [281]meaning [282]Christ, whose religion he had [283]abjured, and hence was called Julian the Apostate.

After the death of Julian, [284]Jovian, a [285]native of Pannonia, was [286]proclaimed emperor by the [287]soldiers. He [288]ordered the temples of the idols to be [289]shut up, and their [290]sacrifices to be [291]abolished. He made an [292]inglorious peace with Sapor, king of the Persians, for thirty years, by which he [293]yielded up Nisibis, and the greatest [294]part of Mesopotamia. He died in his [295]return to Constantinople, in the [296]confines of Galatea and Bithynia. [180]

In the year of Christ 364, [297]Valentinian was [298]chosen emperor at Nice, and not long after [299]gave the [300]title of [301]Augustus to his brother [302]Valens; and [303]leaving him in the East, [304]came into the [305]West himself. He had a great many good [306]qualities, but was [307]particularly [308]famed for his [309]love of [310]justice. He made war against the Alemanni, [311]Saxons, Quadri, and other [312]nations. He [313]died in Pannonia, of an [314]apoplexy, in the 55th year of his [315]age, and the 12th of his [316]reign.

His brother Valens [317]suppressed Procopius, a [318]relation of [319]Julian, who had [320]assumed the [321]purple at Constantinople. After which he made war with the [322]Goths; but upon the [323]suit of their king [324]Athararicus, [325]granted them a [326]peace, in the year 369. Ten years after this, Athararicus with Fritigernes, were [327]driven out of their [328]country by the [329]Huns, and were [330]kindly [331]received by Valens, and [332]settled with their Goths in [333]Thrace. They afterwards excited an [334]insurrection against the Romans, and Valens being [335]wounded in a [336]battle with them, near [337]Hadrianople, was [338]burnt [339]alive by the barbarians, in a [340]cottage he [341]fled to. He reigned fourteen years and four months. [181]

The emperor Valentinian had two sons, [342]Gratian and Valentinian. The former he [343]declared Augustus in Gaul, in the year 367; and his other son was [344]immediately after the death of his father [345]advanced to the same [346]dignity by the soldiers, in the year 375, and the 10th year of his age. Gratian had an [347]aversion to [348]public [349]business. After the death of Valens, the Goths [350]over-running Thrace, and other [351]provinces of the Roman empire, not [352]being able alone to [353]bear the [354]burthen, he [355]sent for [356]Theodosius out of [357]Spain, and made him his [358]associate, who was then in the 33rd year of his age.

Theodosius having [359]conquered the barbarians, [360]restored the public [361]peace. At last the whole [362]nation of the Goths, with their king, [363]delivered themselves up to the Romans, to whom the emperor [364]assigned [365]lands. After these things, Maximus [366]seized the [367]government in [368]Britain, in the year 382; and having [369]fixed his imperial [370]seat at Triers, [371]basely killed Gratian at Lyons, after he had been [372]forsaken by his army; but Theodosius [373]revenged his death, and [374]likewise [375]re-established Valentinian the [376]younger, who had been [377]obliged to [378]quit Italy. This [379]happened in the year 388, in which he [380]overthrew and killed Maximus near Aquileia. Theodosius had all the [381]accomplishments [382]becoming a Christian emperor: [383]inferior to none of the [384]foregoing or [385]following princes; a [386]consummate general, never [387]undertaking any war but such as was [388]necessary; of [389]singular [390]clemency and [391]humanity, yet a little [392]inclined to [393]passion. [182]

In the year 391, Eugenius, [394]supported by the [395]power of Arbogastes, [396]set up for emperor, and in the following year, Valentinian was slain at Vienne in Gaul, by the same Arbogastes. Two years after, [397]Eugenius was [398]routed, [399]taken prisoner, and put to [400]death by Theodosius. Arbogastes was his own [401]executioner. The year following, 395, this excellent emperor died at Milan, after a reign of sixteen years.

Theodosius [402]left two sons, [403]Arcadius and [404]Honorius; to the [405]former he [406]gave the [407]East, to the [408]latter the [409]West. Arcadius, [410]immediately after his father's death, [411]married Eudoxia, which [412]match was [413]brought about by Eutropius, [414]for fear of his [415]taking to wife Ruffinus's daughter. This Ruffinus in the East, and Stilicho in the West, were at that time two men of the greatest [416]eminence and [417]power in the empire. Stilicho, after the death of Theodosius, [418]laying claim to the [419]management of both the Eastern and Western empires, and [420]marching [421]Eastward, Ruffinus [422]endeavoured [423]to hinder him, by [424]posting his [425]troops in all the [426]passages into [427]Greece, and [428]sent for Alaricus, king of the Goths, who [429]over-ran Greece, but was [430]defeated by Stilicho. At last, Ruffinus was [431]slain by the [432]soldiers, the same year in which Theodosius died. After his death, Eutropius [433]became very intimate with Arcadius, but was at last [434]disgraced and slain, in the very year in which he was [435]consul. In 403, died Arcadius, a prince of a [436]peaceable, but [437]indolent [438]temper, and too much [439]governed by his [440]wife. He left the [441]guardianship of his son, by [442]will, to Jezdegirdes, king of the [443]Persians, who [444]faithfully [445]executed that [446]trust, and [447]committed the [448]care of his [449]ward to Antiochus, a very [450]learned man, who [451]threatened to make war upon any that should [452]offer to [453]disturb him. [183]

In the West, the [454]frequent [455]invasions of the barbarians were almost [456]fatal to the Roman [457]state. Radagisus, king of the Goths, with four, or as [458]others [459]say, two hundred thousand men, [460]invaded Italy, who were very [461]happily [462]cut off by Stilicho, the general himself being [463]taken and [464]slain. After Alaricus, a king of the [465]Goths, having [466]laid [467]Greece waste, and [468]continued a long time in [469]Epirus, at the [470]instigation of Stilicho, who was [471]desirous to [472]take [473]Illyricum from Arcadius, in order to [474]annex it to the [475]dominions of Honorius, afterwards [476]penetrated into Italy. To [477]get rid of him, Honorius [478]gave him [479]Spain and Gaul to [480]live in, himself not being in a condition to [481]keep those [482]provinces. [184]

As Alaricus was [483]marching thither, Saul, a [484]pagan general, whom Stilicho had [485]placed at the [486]head of an army, [487]falling upon the Barbarians, was [488]defeated by them. This [489]success so [490]elevated Alaricus, that [491]quitting his [492]former [493]design, he [494]over-ran Italy, and [495]took Rome: but before this, Stilicho was [496]put to death by the [497]order of Honorius. For, after the death of Theodosius, [498]designing to get the empire to himself and to make his son [499]Eucherius, who was a [500]pagan, and an enemy to the [501]Christians, emperor; the better to [502]accomplish his [503]design, he [504]resolved to [505]throw all into [506]confusion. [507]Wherefore he sent for the Barbarians to [508]ravage the empire, and [509]let the Alans, the Vandals, the Suevi, and the Burgundians, loose upon France and Spain. His [510]relation to the emperor [511]encouraged him in it; for he had Serena, the daughter of Theodosius's brother, in [512]marriage, and had [513]disposed of the two daughters he had by her, first, [514]Mary, and after her death, [515]Termantia, in marriage to Honorius. But these [516]intrigues being [517]discovered by [518]Olympius, in the year of Christ 408, he was slain by the [519]hands of [520]Heraclius. The year following, Eucherius was [521]put to death, with his mother Serena. After Stilicho was [522]taken off, Alaricus was [523]desirous to [524]come to an [525]accommodation with Honorius, but was [526]foolishly [527]rejected. Wherefore, with a [528]body of [529]Goths, and [530]Huns, in [531]conjunction with his wife's brother [532]Athaulfus, he [533]laid siege to Rome, and [534]carried it in the year 410. The [535]plunder of it he [536]gave to his soldiers, but with orders that all such as [537]fled to the [538]churches, [539]especially those of [540]Peter and [541]Paul, should have [542]quarter given them. He then [543]went to [544]Rhegium, in order to [545]pass over into Sicily and Africa, but there [546]died. He was [547]succeeded by Athaulfus, who [548]plundered Rome again, [549]carried off Placidia the emperor's sister, and [550]married her.

[185]

During this [551]storm in Italy, the same [552]calamity [553]fell upon Gaul and Spain. The Alans, Vandals, Suevans, [554]laid waste Gaul, passed the [555]Pyrenæan mountains, and [556]made themselves [557]masters of Spain in the year 409. The Vandals and Suevans [558]seized upon Galæcia; the Alans, Lusitania and the [559]province of [560]Carthage; the [561]Silingans, which was another [562]branch of the Vandals, Bœtica.

After the [563]breaking in of the Goths in 410, [564]divers [565]pretenders to the empire [566]started up in [567]several [568]places. First Attalus was [569]made emperor, by the [570]senate, at the [571]command of Alaricus. He [572]proudly [573]rejected Honorius, who [574]offered by his [575]ambassadors to [576]receive him as his [577]partner in the empire, but was [578]obliged by Alaricus to [579]return to a [580]private [581]condition, and was afterwards [582]put up and [583]down again several times. At length, [584]renewing his [585]pretensions in Gaul, but not being [586]supported by the [587]Goths, he was [588]taken [589]prisoner, and [590]put into the [591]hands of Honorius, who [592]spared his [593]life, but [594]cut off one of his hands.

[186]

[595]Martius Gratianus, and Constantine in [596]Britain, [597]usurped the [598]supreme [599]power, and were [600]taken off. [601]Jovin and [602]Sebastian, two brothers, then [603]pretended to the empire; but were [604]taken and [605]slain by [606]Athaulfus, king of the Goths. [607]Heraclianus was set up in Africa, and [608]venturing over into Italy against Honorius, was [609]routed by Marinus at [610]Utriculum; and [611]returning into Africa, was slain at [612]Carthage.

In the year 415, Athaulfus was slain by a Goth, and [613]succeeded by Sigericus, who was destroyed seven days after; and succeeded by Vuallia, who [614]made peace with the Romans, and [615]restored Placidia to Honorius; after which he made war against the Alans, Vandals, Suevi, and other [616]nations, who had [617]settled in Spain. Honorius [618]married Placidia against her [619]will to [620]Constantius Comes, who [621]confirmed the peace with Vuallia, [622]sent for him back into Gaul, and [623]gave him that part of [624]Aquitain which [625]lies betwixt Thoulouse and the [626]sea, to [627]live in. Upon this, Thoulouse [628]became the [629]capital of the [630]Gothic, or [631]Visigothic [632]kingdom in Gaul. This [633]happened in the year 419. In the year following, Honorius, against his [634]will, made Constantius his [635]companion in the empire, who died seven months after, as did Honorius himself in the year 428.

[187]

He was [636]succeeded by Valentinian his sister's son. In his reign the Vandals, whom Boniface had hitherto [637]repulsed from the [638]shores of Africa, [639]entered it from Spain, under the [640]command of Geisericus. For Boniface being [641]impeached by [642]Ætius of [643]high-treason, and [644]Sigisvulphus being [645]sent against him, [646]finding himself not a [647]match for the Romans, [648]fled to the Vandals for [649]assistance, with whom he had [650]contracted an

[651]alliance before. Wherefore in the year 427, Geisericus, with 80,000 Vandals and Alans, [652]passed over into Africa, and [653]made himself master of it. In the mean time, Boniface being [654]reconciled to Placidia, and not [655]being able to [656]persuade the Barbarians, to [657]return home, [658]endeavoured to [659]oblige them, by [660]force of arms, and was [661]routed. He then [662]went to Rome, and died there soon after.

Ætius in Gaul [663]sustained his part very well for the Romans, against the Franks, Goths, Burgundians, Huns, and other Barbarians. Ætius had [664]sent for the Huns to his assistance against the Goths. In the year 434, Honoria, the sister of Valentinian, being [665]banished the [666]court for [667]improper conduct with her [668]steward, and sent to Theodosius, emperor of the [669]East, [670]engaged Attila, king of the Huns, to make war upon the [671]West. [672]Litorius, a Roman general, having the [673]command of them, whilst he [674]endeavoured to [675]eclipse the [676]glory of Ætius, was so [677]foolish as to [678]regard the [679]answers of [680]soothsayers and [681]fortune-tellers, and [682]rashly [683]engaged [684]Theodoricus, king of the Goths, who by the most [685]abject [686]submission [687]declined the war, and after a great [688]overthrow was [689]taken and [690]slain in the year 439, in which [691]Carthage was [692]surprised by the Vandals. At last, in the year 442, Valentinian [693]renewed the peace with Geisericus, and Africa was [694]divided between them.

In the year 450, Attila [695]marched into Gaul, which at that time the [696]Visigoths, Franks, Burgundians, Alans, and other Barbarians, were in [697]possession of. Part of the Romans [698]reluctantly [699]remained under the [700]command of Ætius, who alone at that time [701]kept the [702]western [703]empire from [704]falling [705]to utter [706]ruin. Attila [707]laid siege to Aurelia, but Ætius [708]coming upon him, [709]obliged him to [710]raise the [711]siege, and [712]pursued him into Gallia, and Belgium then [713]overthrew him, in a great [714]battle [715]fought on the [716]plains of Catalonia. There were [717]slain on both [718]sides at least 170,000, and amongst them Theodoricus king of the Goths. It is [719]certain the Huns might have been [720]utterly [721]destroyed, if Ætius had not [722]been afraid, that in the event of the Huns being [723]entirely [724]cut off, the Goths would be [725]insupportable in Gaul.

Attila having [726]unexpectedly [727]escaped, [728]poured his [729]troops into Italy, where he laid siege to Aquileia, and [730]levelled it with the ground. He afterwards [731]laid waste [732]Milan, [733]Ticinum, and other [734]towns; and [735]marching for Rome, was so [736]wrought upon by an [737]embassy from [738]Leo, who [739]met him at the [740]river Mincius, that he [741]went into his own [742]country; afterwards [743]returning into Gaul against the Alans, who had [744]posted themselves beyond the Loire, he was again [745]defeated by [746]Thorismundus, as he had been in the [747]plains of Catalonia; and in the year 454, after an [748]excess of [749]wine, died of [750]vomiting [751]blood.

It is [752]said the city of [753]Venice [754]owes its [755]origin to that [756]inroad of the Barbarians, most of the Italians, [757]especially those of [758]Patavium, [759]flying from the [760]fire and [761]ruins of their cities to some [762]rocks and [763]desert [764]islands in the [765]sea for [766]refuge.

Valentinian, upon the death of his mother Placidia, [767]let loose the [768]reins of [769]power and [770]abused his [771]authority, for the [772]gratification of his [773]baseness and [774]cruelty. He [775]seduced the [776]wife of Maximus the senator, [777]put Ætius to death, after Maximus had by his [778]crafty [779]contrivances [780]rendered him [781]suspected, in the year 454; and the year following, by the contrivance of the same Maximus, he was [782]stabbed by Ætius's [783]life-guard in the [784]field of [785]Mars, being thirty-six years of age, and in the 31st of his reign. [786]Eudoxia, the [787]consort of Valentinian, to [788]revenge the death of her [789]husband, [790]sent for Gensericus out of Africa, into Italy. Maximus, upon his [791]arrival, [792]endeavoured to [793]save himself by [794]flight, but was [795]torn in pieces by his own men, and [796]thrown into the [797]Tiber, after a [798]reign of [799]hardly two [800]months. Gensericus, after he had [801]taken the city, was so [802]affected by an [803]address of [804]Pope Leo's, that he did not [805]set it on fire, or [806]put any to the sword; but [807]made plunder of all the [808]wealth of the [809]place, both [810]sacred and [811]profane, for fourteen days together; and [812]carried off Eudoxia, with her two daughters, Eudocia and Placidia, into Africa: the [813]former of which he [814]married to his son [815]Hunericus.

In the mean time, [816]Avitus Gallus being proclaimed emperor by the [817]Gallic [818]army at Thoulouse, made peace with the Goths; at whose [819]persuasion, Theodoric [820]entering Spain, [821]conquered the Suevi, and [822]killed their king [823]Richiarius in the year 456.

[188]

[189]

[190]

[191]

After him, [824]Majorianus [825]took the [826]government upon him at Ravenna; a [827]prince of a [828]great [829]soul, who being [830]desirous to [831]recover Africa, was going to Gensericus, under the [832]title of [833]ambassador; but being [834]seized by Ricimer at Dertona, and [835]obliged to [836]resign, was [837]put to death in the year 461, after a reign of four years and four months.

Ricimer [838]raised Severus for emperor, [839]according to an [840]agreement between them, and [841]poisoned him in the fourth year of his reign.

After this, there was an [842]interregnum of a year, and some months, till Anthemius was [843]sent into the West by [844]Leo, emperor of the [845]East, between whom and [846]Ricimer, it had been [847]agreed he should be [848]declared emperor, and his daughter should [849]marry Ricimer. Thus the barbarian being [850]made Anthemius's [851]son-in-law, with his [852]wonted [853]treachery, first [854]raised a civil war against him, and then [855]put him to death at Rome, after he had [856]reigned five years and some months.

[857]Olybrius was then [858]put up in the [859]room of Anthemius by Ricimer, who [860]died forty days after Anthemius's death: nor [861]was he long survived by Olybrius, for he died the same year, about seven months after his [862]promotion. [192]

[863]He was followed by [864]Glycerius, who [865]took the [866]government upon himself at Ravenna, in the year 473, and reigned a year and four months. He was [867]succeeded by [868]Julius Nepos, who was [869]killed about five years after his [870]advancement.

[871]Momyllus, who was [872]likewise [873]called [874]Augustulus, was [875]set up by his father [876]Orestes, being the [877]last of all the emperors in the [878]West; for [879]Odoacer, king of the [880]Turcilingans, with the [881]Scyrans, and [882]Herulans, [883]seized Italy, and after having [884]slain Orestes and his brother [885]Paul, [886]banished Augustus into Campania. Thus [887]ended the [888]empire of the West. In the year of [889]Christ 476.

FOOTNOTES

- [1] *godúto*
- [2] *dignità*
- [3] *pretendere*
- [4] *moríre*
- [5] *affábile*
- [6] *civíle*
- [7] *natura*
- [8] *permettere*
- [9] *ricerche*
- [10] *Cristiáno*
- [11] *preferíre*
- [12] *servitóre*
- [13] *sapére*
- [14] *professione*
- [15] *altro*
- [16] *principiáre*
- [17] *regno*
- [18] *nato*
- [19] *Élena*
- [20] *atóre*
- [21] *legítimo*
- [22] *moglie*
- [23] *basso*
- [24] *nascita*
- [25] *Massénzio*
- [26] *Ercúlio*

- [27] *proclamáto*
- [28] *pretoriáno*
- [29] *guardia*
- [30] *guadagnáre*
- [31] *pópolo*
- [32] *parére*
- [33] *favoreggiáre*
- [34] *Cristiáno*
- [35] *poco dopo*
- [36] *voltolársi*
- [37] *sorte*
- [38] *dissolutézza*
- [39] *crudeltà*
- [40] *mandáre*
- [41] *abbandonáto*
- [42] *fuggire*
- [43] *marciáre*
- [44] *armáta*
- [45] *pariménte*
- [46] *Illírigo*
- [47] *fare*
- [48] *speráre*
- [49] *ricuperáre*
- [50] *lasciáto*
- [51] *voglia*
- [52] *ritornáre*
- [53] *consigliáre*
- [54] *Diocleziano*
- [55] *dimoráre*
- [56] *léttera*
- [57] *fare*
- [58] *ricusáre*
- [59] *adescáre*
- [60] *spergiúro*
- [61] *uccidere*
- [62] *fare una congiúra*
- [63] *forzato*
- [64] *fuggire*
- [65] *dare*
- [66] *matrimónio*
- [67] *entráto*
- [68] *cattivo*
- [69] *diségno*
- [70] *género*
- [71] *scopérto*
- [72] *rifugiársi*
- [73] *Marsiglia*
- [74] *soffrírre*
- [75] *castígo*
- [76] *tradiménto*

- [77] *moríre*
- [78] *annoveráre*
- [79] *nume*
- [80] *Costantíno*
- [81] *marciáre*
- [82] *Massénzio*
- [83] *incorraggíto*
- [84] *prodígio*
- [85] *croce*
- [86] *vedére*
- [87] *ciélo*
- [88] *traversáto*
- [89] *Alpi*
- [90] *sconfítto*
- [91] *méttere in rotta*
- [92] *fuggíre*
- [93] *ponte*
- [94] *messo*
- [95] *Tévere*
- [96] *rompérsi*
- [97] *annegáto*
- [98] *affáre*
- [99] *regoláto*
- [100] *gita*
- [101] *maritáre*
- [102] *Costánza*
- [103] *fatto*
- [104] *nemíco*
- [105] *Cristiáno*
- [106] *intrapréndere*
- [107] *battúto*
- [108] *Illíríco*
- [109] *fuggíre*
- [110] *moríre*
- [111] *orribile*
- [112] *patto*
- [113] *príncipe*
- [114] *duráre*
- [115] *combattiménto*
- [116] *battáglia*
- [117] *pianúre*
- [118] *Liciniáni*
- [119] *affátto*
- [120] *pace*
- [121] *fatto*
- [122] *divíso*
- [123] *préndere*
- [124] *sotto pretésto*
- [125] *passáre*
- [126] *límite*

- [127] *sforzato*
- [128] *stato*
- [129] *sconfitta vicino Adrianopoli*
- [130] *di là fuggire*
- [131] *Bisanzio*
- [132] *sconfitto*
- [133] *mare*
- [134] *messo in rotta*
- [135] *battaglia*
- [136] *Calcedonia*
- [137] *fatto prigioniero*
- [138] *ottenere*
- [139] *interposizione*
- [140] *bandito*
- [141] *Tessalonica*
- [142] *cercare*
- [143] *sollevazione*
- [144] *messo*
- [145] *Crispo Cesare*
- [146] *moglie*
- [147] *gióvine*
- [148] *straordinario*
- [149] *genio*
- [150] *sospetto*
- [151] *tentare*
- [152] *sedurre*
- [153] *matrióna*
- [154] *seguente*
- [155] *trovato*
- [156] *colpevole*
- [157] *falsamente*
- [158] *accusare*
- [159] *soffogato*
- [160] *bagno*
- [161] *ordine*
- [162] *marito*
- [163] *rifabbricato*
- [164] *arricchito*
- [165] *spóglia*
- [166] *mondo*
- [167] *uguagliare*
- [168] *prendere*
- [169] *nome*
- [170] *ristauratore*
- [171] *chiamata*
- [172] *Costantinopoli*
- [173] *soggiogato*
- [174] *Sarmati*
- [175] *mandato*
- [176] *luógo*

[177] *império*
[178] *sobbórgo*
[179] *autére*
[180] *battezzáto*
[181] *morte*
[182] *lasciáre*
[183] *erede*
[184] *dividere*
[185] *primogénito*
[186] *Gállia*
[187] *di là dell'*
[188] *Alpi*
[189] *Costánte*
[190] *gióvine*
[191] *resto*
[192] *ísola*
[193] *Trácia*
[194] *Grécia*
[195] *secóndogénito*
[196] *Levánte*
[197] *Egíttó*
[198] *accordársi*
[199] *morte*
[200] *invádere*
[201] *território*
[202] *uccíso*
[203] *Magnénzio*
[204] *Pirenéi*
[205] *impegnáto*
[206] *pericolóso*
[207] *battáglia*
[208] *dato*
[209] *soprafátto*
[210] *assálto*
[211] *sortire*
[212] *vittorióso*
[213] *disperazióne*
[214] *dichiaráto*
[215] *governatóre*
[216] *abusáre*
[217] *autorità*
[218] *mandáto a cercáre*
[219] *messo*
[220] *Giuliáno*
[221] *salváto*
[222] *interposizióne*
[223] *consórte*
[224] *studiáre*
[225] *promosso*
[226] *dignità*

[227] *maritáto*
[228] *Élena*
[229] *fatto*
[230] *Gállia*
[231] *fortunáto*
[232] *Alemanni*
[233] *Franchi*
[234] *Alemánni*
[235] *mandáre*
[236] *Re*
[237] *prigioniéro*
[238] *invidiáre*
[239] *succésso*
[240] *procuráre*
[241] *levare*
[242] *mandáre*
[243] *Levánte*
[244] *proclamáre*
[245] *Parígi*
[246] *mentre*
[247] *preparársi*
[248] *súbito che*
[249] *inténdere*
[250] *marciáre*
[251] *in viaggio*
[252] *padróne*
[253] *uccídere*
[254] *bandíre*
[255] *amíco*
[256] *apríre*
[257] *témpio*
[258] *ídolo*
[259] *abjuráre*
[260] *Cristiáno*
[261] *fede*
[262] *consacráto*
[263] *gran prete*
[264] *secóndo*
[265] *rito*
[266] *pagáno*
[267] *religióne*
[268] *uccíso*
[269] *accórgersi*
[270] *ferita*
[271] *mortále*
[272] *raccogliere*
[273] *sangue*
[274] *mano*
[275] *gettáre*
[276] *verso*

[277] *ciélo*
[278] *paróla*
[279] *vinto*
[280] *Galiléo*
[281] *voler dire*
[282] *Cristo*
[283] *abjuráre*
[284] *Gioviáno*
[285] *natívo*
[286] *proclamáto*
[287] *soldáto*
[288] *fare*
[289] *chiúdere*
[290] *sacrífizio*
[291] *abbolire*
[292] *disonorevole*
[293] *cédere*
[294] *parte*
[295] *ritorno*
[296] *confini*
[297] *Valentiniáno*
[298] *elétto*
[299] *dare*
[300] *título*
[301] *Augústo*
[302] *Valénte*
[303] *lasciáre*
[304] *veníre*
[305] *Occidénte*
[306] *qualità*
[307] *particolarménte*
[308] *distinto*
[309] *amóre*
[310] *giustízia*
[311] *Sássoni*
[312] *nazióne*
[313] *moríre*
[314] *apopléssia*
[315] *età*
[316] *regno*
[317] *reprímere*
[318] *parénte*
[319] *Giuliáno*
[320] *assúmere*
[321] *pórpora*
[322] *Goti*
[323] *sollecitazióne*
[324] *Atanárico*
[325] *accordáre*
[326] *pace*

- [327] *scacciáto*
- [328] *pátria*
- [329] *Unni*
- [330] *corteseménte*
- [331] *ricevúto*
- [332] *stabilírsi*
- [333] *Trácia*
- [334] *rivólta*
- [335] *feríto*
- [336] *battágliá*
- [337] *Adrianópolis*
- [338] *bruciáto*
- [339] *vivo*
- [340] *capánna*
- [341] *rifugiársi*
- [342] *Graziáno*
- [343] *dichiaráre*
- [344] *súbito*
- [345] *promósso*
- [346] *dignità*
- [347] *avversióne*
- [348] *púbblíco*
- [349] *affáre*
- [350] *inondáre*
- [351] *província*
- [352] *non potére*
- [353] *sopportáre*
- [354] *peso*
- [355] *far veníre*
- [356] *Teodósio*
- [357] *Spagna*
- [358] *compágnó*
- [359] *battuto*
- [360] *ristabilíre*
- [361] *pace*
- [362] *nazióne*
- [363] *arrendérsi*
- [364] *assegnáre*
- [365] *terra*
- [366] *usurpáre*
- [367] *govérno*
- [368] *Brettágna*
- [369] *fissáto*
- [370] *séggio*
- [371] *in modo viliacco*
- [372] *abbandonáto*
- [373] *vendicársi*
- [374] *pariménte*
- [375] *ristabilíre*
- [376] *gióvine*

[377] *obbligáto*
[378] *lasciáre*
[379] *succédere*
[380] *sconfíggere*
[381] *qualità*
[382] *convenévole*
[383] *inferióre*
[384] *precedénte*
[385] *seguénte*
[386] *consumáto*
[387] *intrapréndere*
[388] *necessário*
[389] *singoláre*
[390] *cleménza*
[391] *umanità*
[392] *inclináto*
[393] *cóllera*
[394] *sostenúto*
[395] *poténza*
[396] *farsi*
[397] *Eugénio*
[398] *sconfitto*
[399] *fatto*
[400] *morte*
[401] *carnéfica*
[402] *lasciáre*
[403] *Arcádio*
[404] *Onório*
[405] *primo*
[406] *dare*
[407] *Levánte*
[408] *último*
[409] *occidénte*
[410] *súbito*
[411] *sposáre*
[412] *matrimónio*
[413] *procurato*
[414] *di paura che*
[415] *pigliáre*
[416] *elevazione*
[417] *potére*
[418] *preténdere*
[419] *governo*
[420] *marciáre*
[421] *verso il levánte*
[422] *cercáre*
[423] *impedíre*
[424] *collocáre*
[425] *truppa*
[426] *passággio*

[427] *Grécia*
[428] *fare veníre*
[429] *trascórrere*
[430] *sconfítto*
[431] *ucciso*
[432] *soldáto*
[433] *diventáre*
[434] *disgraziáto*
[435] *consóle*
[436] *pacífico*
[437] *indolénate*
[438] *natúra*
[439] *governáto*
[440] *moglie*
[441] *tutéla*
[442] *testaménto*
[443] *Persiano*
[444] *fedelménate*
[445] *eseguíre*
[446] *incombénza*
[447] *riméttere*
[448] *cura*
[449] *pupílo*
[450] *sapiénate*
[451] *minacciáre*
[452] *tentáre*
[453] *molestáre*
[454] *frequénate*
[455] *invasiónate*
[456] *fatále*
[457] *stato*
[458] *altro*
[459] *dire*
[460] *invádere*
[461] *fortunataménate*
[462] *tagliáto a pezzi*
[463] *preso*
[464] *ucciso*
[465] *Goti*
[466] *desoláto*
[467] *Grécia*
[468] *continuáto*
[469] *Epíro*
[470] *istigazióne*
[471] *desideráre*
[472] *préndere*
[473] *Illírico*
[474] *aggiúngere*
[475] *stato*
[476] *penetráre*

[477] *disfársi*
[478] *dare*
[479] *Spágna*
[480] *per suo státo*
[481] *mantenére*
[482] *província*
[483] *marciáre*
[484] *pagáno*
[485] *messó*
[486] *tésta*
[487] *attaccáre*
[488] *sconfitto*
[489] *succésso*
[490] *gonfiáre*
[491] *desístere*
[492] *primo*
[493] *diségno*
[494] *trascórrere*
[495] *préndere*
[496] *messó*
[497] *órdine*
[498] *propórsi*
[499] *Euchério*
[500] *pagáno*
[501] *Cristiáno*
[502] *compíre*
[503] *diségno*
[504] *risólvere*
[505] *méttere*
[506] *confusióné*
[507] *perciò*
[508] *saccheggiáre*
[509] *scatenáre*
[510] *affinità*
[511] *incorragíre*
[512] *matrimónio*
[513] *dare*
[514] *Maria*
[515] *Termánzia*
[516] *manéggio*
[517] *scopérto*
[518] *Olímpio*
[519] *mano*
[520] *Eráclio*
[521] *messó*
[522] *uccíso*
[523] *desideróso*
[524] *veníre*
[525] *accommodaménto*
[526] *scioccaménte*

[527] *rigettáto*
[528] *corpo*
[529] *Goti*
[530] *Unni*
[531] *congiunzione*
[532] *Ataúlfo*
[533] *assediáre*
[534] *víncere*
[535] *bottíno*
[536] *dare*
[537] *rifugiársi*
[538] *chiésa*
[539] *specialmente*
[540] *Piétro*
[541] *Páolo*
[542] *fossero salve*
[543] *andáre*
[544] *Réggio*
[545] *passáre*
[546] *moríre*
[547] *succédere*
[548] *sacchegíare*
[549] *portár via*
[550] *sposáre*
[551] *tempésta*
[552] *calamità*
[553] *attaccáre*
[554] *desoláre*
[555] *Pirenéi*
[556] *rendérsi*
[557] *padróne*
[558] *impossessársi*
[559] *província*
[560] *Cartágine*
[561] *Silingáni*
[562] *distaccamento*
[563] *incursióne*
[564] *divérso*
[565] *pretendénte*
[566] *levársi*
[567] *divérso*
[568] *luógo*
[569] *fato*
[570] *senáto*
[571] *comándo*
[572] *superbaménte*
[573] *rigettáre*
[574] *offeríre*
[575] *ambasciadóre*
[576] *ricévere*

[577] *compáño*
[578] *obligáto*
[579] *ritornáre*
[580] *priváto*
[581] *stato*
[582] *esaltáto*
[583] *depósto*
[584] *rinnováre*
[585] *pretensióne*
[586] *sopportáto*
[587] *Goti*
[588] *fatto*
[589] *prigioniero*
[590] *messo*
[591] *mano*
[592] *risparmiáre*
[593] *vita*
[594] *tagliáre*
[595] *Marco Graziáno*
[596] *Brettáña*
[597] *usurpáre*
[598] *suprémo*
[599] *potére*
[600] *ucciso*
[601] *Giovino*
[602] *Sebastiáno*
[603] *preténdere*
[604] *preso*
[605] *ucciso*
[606] *Ataúlfo*
[607] *Eracliáno*
[608] *avventuráre di passáre*
[609] *sconfitto*
[610] *Otrículo*
[611] *ritornáre*
[612] *Cartágine*
[613] *succédere*
[614] *far pace*
[615] *restituíre*
[616] *nazióne*
[617] *stabilíto*
[618] *maritáre*
[619] *volontà*
[620] *Costánzo Cométe*
[621] *confermáre*
[622] *far ritornáre*
[623] *dare*
[624] *Aquitánia*
[625] *giáce*
[626] *mare*

[627] *dimoràre*
[628] *divenìre*
[629] *capitále*
[630] *Gótico*
[631] *Visigótico*
[632] *regno*
[633] *succédere*
[634] *volontà*
[635] *compágnno*
[636] *succéssegli*
[637] *rispinto*
[638] *costa*
[639] *entràre*
[640] *comándo*
[641] *accusáto*
[642] *Ézio*
[643] *delitto di lesa maestà*
[644] *Sigisvúlfo*
[645] *mandáto*
[646] *trovársi*
[647] *uguále*
[648] *ricórrere*
[649] *assisténza*
[650] *contrattáto*
[651] *lega*
[652] *passáre*
[653] *impadronírsi*
[654] *riconciliáto*
[655] *potére*
[656] *persuadére*
[657] *ritornáre nel loro paese*
[658] *procuráre*
[659] *obbligáre*
[660] *forza delle armi*
[661] *sconfitto*
[662] *andáre*
[663] *sostenére*
[664] *mandáto a cercáre*
[665] *bandíto*
[666] *corte*
[667] *disonestà*
[668] *maggiordómo*
[669] *Levánte*
[670] *impegnáre*
[671] *Occidénte*
[672] *Litório*
[673] *comándo*
[674] *procuráre*
[675] *eclissáre*
[676] *glória*

[677] *stolto*
[678] *badáre*
[679] *rispósta*
[680] *astrólogo*
[681] *indovíno*
[682] *temerariaménte*
[683] *attaccáre*
[684] *Teodoríco*
[685] *abbietto*
[686] *sommissióne*
[687] *sfuggíre*
[688] *sconfitta*
[689] *preso*
[690] *ucciso*
[691] *Cartágine*
[692] *sorpréso*
[693] *rinnováre*
[694] *spartíto*
[695] *marciáre*
[696] *Visigóti*
[697] *posséso*
[698] *malvolontiéri*
[699] *rimanére*
[700] *comándo*
[701] *impedíre*
[702] *occidentále*
[703] *império*
[704] *caszáre*
[705] *totále*
[706] *rovína*
[707] *assediáre*
[708] *veníre addósso*
[709] *forzáre*
[710] *leváre*
[711] *assédio*
[712] *incalzáre*
[713] *rómpere*
[714] *battáglia*
[715] *dato*
[716] *pianúra*
[717] *ucciso*
[718] *banda*
[719] *certo*
[720] *affátto*
[721] *distrútto*
[722] *aver paúra*
[723] *interaménte*
[724] *sconfitto*
[725] *insoportábile*
[726] *impensataménte*

[727] *scappáto*
[728] *inondáre colle sue*
[729] *truppe*
[730] *spianáre*
[731] *devastáre*
[732] *Miláno*
[733] *Ticíno*
[734] *città*
[735] *marciáre*
[736] *commosso*
[737] *ambasciáta*
[738] *Leóne*
[739] *incontráre*
[740] *fíume Míncio*
[741] *ritirársi*
[742] *paése*
[743] *tornáre*
[744] *nesso*
[745] *sconfitto*
[746] *Torrismóndo*
[747] *pianúra*
[748] *stravízso*
[749] *vino*
[750] *vómito*
[751] *sangue*
[752] *dire*
[753] *Venézia*
[754] *dovére*
[755] *orígine*
[756] *incursióne*
[757] *specialménte*
[758] *Padova*
[759] *fuggíre*
[760] *fuóco*
[761] *rovína*
[762] *scóglio*
[763] *disabitáto*
[764] *ísola*
[765] *mare*
[766] *a rifúgiarsi*
[767] *rilasciáre*
[768] *freno*
[769] *dissolutézza*
[770] *abusáre*
[771] *autorità*
[772] *soddisfazióne*
[773] *sensualità*
[774] *crudeltà*
[775] *sedúrre*
[776] *móglie*

[777] *méttere*
[778] *maligno*
[779] *invenzióne*
[780] *reso*
[781] *sospétto*
[782] *pugnaláto*
[783] *guárdia di corpo*
[784] *campo*
[785] *Marte*
[786] *Eudóssia*
[787] *consórte*
[788] *vendicáre*
[789] *maríto*
[790] *far veníre*
[791] *arriváre*
[792] *procuráre*
[793] *salvársi*
[794] *fuga*
[795] *fatto a pezzi*
[796] *gettáto*
[797] *Tévere*
[798] *regno*
[799] *appéna*
[800] *mese*
[801] *preso*
[802] *commosso*
[803] *súplica*
[804] *papa Leóné*
[805] *méttere il fuóco*
[806] *méttere a fil di spada*
[807] *predáre*
[808] *ricchézza*
[809] *piázza*
[810] *sacro*
[811] *profáno*
[812] *portár via*
[813] *primo*
[814] *maritáre*
[815] *Uneríco*
[816] *Avíto Gallo*
[817] *Gállico*
[818] *armáto*
[819] *persuasióne*
[820] *entráre*
[821] *conquistáre*
[822] *uccídere*
[823] *Ricciário*
[824] *Maggioriáno*
[825] *préndere*
[826] *govérno*

[827] *príncipe*
[828] *gran*
[829] *mente*
[830] *bramóso*
[831] *ricuperáre*
[832] *título*
[833] *ambasciadóre*
[834] *arrestáto*
[835] *obbligáto*
[836] *rassegnáre*
[837] *nesso*
[838] *innalzáre all'impero*
[839] *secóndo*
[840] *patto*
[841] *avvelenáre*
[842] *interrégno*
[843] *mandáto*
[844] *Leóne*
[845] *Oriente*
[846] *Ricímero*
[847] *convenúto*
[848] *dichiaráto*
[849] *sposáre*
[850] *divenuto*
[851] *género*
[852] *sólito*
[853] *perfidia*
[854] *suscitáre*
[855] *méttere*
[856] *regnáto*
[857] *Olíbrío*
[858] *nesso*
[859] *luógo*
[860] *moríre*
[861] *sopravisse a questi lungo tempo*
[862] *promozióné*
[863] *venne dopo lui*
[864] *Glicério*
[865] *préndere*
[866] *govérno*
[867] *succédere*
[868] *Giúlio Nepóte*
[869] *uccíso*
[870] *elevazióne*
[871] *Momíllo*
[872] *pariménte*
[873] *chiamáto*
[874] *Augústolo*
[875] *innalzáto*
[876] *Oréste*

- [877] *último*
[878] *Occidente*
[879] *Odouácro*
[880] *Turcilingáni*
[881] *Sciráni*
[882] *Éruli*
[883] *usurpáre*
[884] *uccíso*
[885] *Páolo*
[886] *bandíre*
[887] *finíre*
[888] *império*
[889] *Cristo*
-

FINE.

Printed by T. C. Hansard, Peterborough-court, Fleet-street, London.

*** END OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK EXERCISES UPON THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF ITALIAN SPEECH, WITH REFERENCES TO VENERONI'S GRAMMAR ***

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

START: FULL LICENSE
THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE
PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase “Project Gutenberg”), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg™ License available with this file or online at www.gutenberg.org/license.

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg™ electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. “Project Gutenberg” is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg™ electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg™ electronic works if you

follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg™ electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation (“the Foundation” or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg™ works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg™ name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg™ License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg™ work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg™ License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg™ work (any work on which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” appears, or with which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg™ electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase “Project Gutenberg” associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg™ trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg™ electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg™ License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg™ License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg™.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg™ License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg™ work in a format other than “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg™ website (www.gutenberg.org), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg™ License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg™ works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works provided that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg™ works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, "Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."
- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.
- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.
- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain "Defects," such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the "Right of Replacement or Refund" described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS', WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg™ work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg™ work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg™

Project Gutenberg™ is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg™'s goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg™ collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg™ and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at www.gutenberg.org.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596-1887. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at www.gutenberg.org/contact

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations (\$1 to \$5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit www.gutenberg.org/donate.

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: www.gutenberg.org/donate

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg™ electronic works

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg™ concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg™ eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg™ eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility: www.gutenberg.org.

This website includes information about Project Gutenberg™, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.